SSL VPN Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS Release 15M&T

Americas Headquarters
Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
http://www.cisco.com
Tel: 408 526-4000
  800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883
CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1  SSL VPN  1

Finding Feature Information  2
Prerequisites for SSL VPN  2
Restrictions for SSL VPN  3
  General Restrictions for SSL VPN  3
  PKI AAA Authorization Using the Entire Subject Name  3
  Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client  3
  Thin-Client Control List Support  4
  HTTP Proxy  4
  Lightweight Directory Access Protocol  4
  Features Not Supported on the Cisco IOS SSL VPN  4
Information About SSL VPN  5
  SSL VPN Overview  5
  Licensing  6
Modes of Remote Access  8
  Remote Access Overview  8
  Clientless Mode  9
  Thin-Client Mode  9
  Tunnel Mode  12
SSL VPN Features  12
  Access Control Enhancements  12
  SSL VPN Client-Side Certificate-Based Authentication  13
  AnyConnect Client Support  14
  Application ACL Support  15
  Automatic Applet Download  15
  Backend HTTP Proxy  15
Front-Door VRF Support 15
Full-Tunnel Cisco Express Forwarding Support 16
GUI Enhancements 17
Internationalization 22
Max-User Limit Message 24
Netegrity Cookie-Based Single SignOn Support 24
NTLM Authentication 25
RADIUS Accounting 25
Stateless High Availability with Hot Standby Router Protocol 25
TCP Port Forwarding and Thin Client 26
URL Obfuscation 28
URL Rewrite Splitter 28
User-Level Bookmarking 29
Virtual Templates 29
License String Support for the 7900 VPN Client 29
SSL VPN DVTI Support 29
SSL VPN Phase-4 Features 30
DTLS Support for IOS SSL VPN 31
Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Full Tunnel Support 32
Other SSL VPN Features 32
Platform Support 36
How to Configure SSL VPN Services on a Router 36
Configuring an SSL VPN Gateway 36
What to Do Next 38
Configuring a Generic SSL VPN Gateway 38
Configuring an SSL VPN Context 39
What to Do Next 44
Configuring an SSL VPN Policy Group 44
What to Do Next 46
Configuring Local AAA Authentication for SSL VPN User Sessions 46
What to Do Next 47
Configuring AAA for SSL VPN Users Using a Secure Access Control Server 47
What to Do Next 49
Configuring PKI Integration with a AAA Server 50
Configuring RADIUS Accounting for SSL VPN User Sessions 53
Monitoring and Maintaining RADIUS Accounting for an SSL VPN Session 54
Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN 55
  What to Do Next 58
Configuring a URL List for Clientless Remote Access 58
  What to Do Next 60
Configuring Microsoft File Shares for Clientless Remote Access 60
  What to Do Next 62
Configuring Citrix Application Support for Clientless Remote Access 63
  What to Do Next 64
Configuring Application Port Forwarding 64
Configuring the SSL VPN Gateway to Distribute CSD and Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Package Files 66
  What to Do Next 68
Configuring Cisco Secure Desktop Support 68
  What to Do Next 69
Configuring Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Full Tunnel Support 69
  Examples 73
  What to Do Next 74
Configuring Advanced SSL VPN Tunnel Features 74
  Examples 77
Configuring VRF Virtualization 77
Configuring ACL Rules 79
Associating an ACL Attribute with a Policy Group 81
  Monitoring and Maintaining ACLs 82
Configuring SSO Netegrity Cookie Support for a Virtual Context 82
Associating an SSO Server with a Policy Group 84
Configuring URL Obfuscation (Masking) 85
Adding a CIFS Server URL List to an SSL VPN Context and Attaching It to a Policy Group 86
Configuring User-Level Bookmarks 87
Configuring FVRF 88
Disabling Full-Tunnel Cisco Express Forwarding 89
Configuring Automatic Authentication and Authorization 90
Configuring SSL VPN Client-Side Certificate-Based Authentication 91
Example: PKI Authentication Using the Entire Subject Name 120
Example: RADIUS Accounting for SSL VPN Sessions 120
Example: URL Obfuscation (Masking) 121
Example: Adding a CIFS Server URL List and Attaching It to a Policy List 121
Example: Typical SSL VPN Configuration 122
Example: Cisco Express Forwarding-Processed Packets 123
Example: Multiple AnyConnect VPN Client Package Files 124
Example: Local Authorization 124
Example: URL Rewrite Splitter 125
Example: Backend HTTP Proxy 125
Example: Stateless High Availability with HSRP 125
Example: Internationalization 126
  Example: Generated Browser Attribute Template 126
  Example: Copying the Browser Attribute File to Another PC for Editing 126
  Example: Copying the Edited File to flash 127
  Example: Output Showing That the Edited File Was Imported 127
  Example: Copying the Language File to Another PC for Editing 127
  Example: Copying the Edited Language File to the Storage Device 127
  Example: Language Template Created 127
  Example: URL List 127
Example: Virtual Template 128
Example: SSL VPN DVTI Support 129
  Example: Configuring per-Tunnel Virtual Templates 129
  Example: Configuring per-Context Virtual Templates 131
Example: SSL VPN Phase-4 Features 132
  Example: Configuring the Start Before Logon (SBL) Functionality 132
  Example: Configuring Split ACL Support 132
  Example: Configuring IP NetMask Functionality 133
Example: Debug Command Output 133
  Example: Configuring SSO 133
Example: Show Command Output 133
  Example: show webvpn context 133
  Example: show webvpn context name 134
  Example: show webvpn gateway 134
Example: show webvpn gateway name 134
Example: show webvpn nbns context all 134
Example: show webvpn policy 135
Example: show webvpn policy (with NTLM Disabled) 135
Example: show webvpn session 135
Example: show webvpn session user 136
Example: show webvpn stats 136
Example: show webvpn stats sso 138
Example: FVRF show Command Output 138
Additional References for SSL VPN 139
Feature Information for SSL VPN 140

CHAPTER 2
Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support 149
Finding Feature Information 149
Prerequisites for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support 149
Restrictions for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support 150
Information About Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support 150
SSL VPN Overview 150
SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support Overview 150
How to Configure Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support 151
Configuring a Smart Tunnel List and Adding Applications 151
What to Do Next 152
Configuring a Group Policy for Smart Tunnels Support 152
Troubleshooting Tips 154
What to Do Next 154
Enabling a Smart Tunnel with the Client Web Browser 154
Smart Tunnel Application Statistics Display 158
Troubleshooting Tips 158
Configuration Examples for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support 159
Example Configuring a Smart Tunnel List and Adding Applications 159
Example Configuring a Group Policy for Smart Tunnels Support 159
Example Verifying the Smart Tunnel Configuration 159
Additional References 160
Feature Information for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support 161
CHAPTER 3  
SSL VPN Remote User Guide 163
  Finding Feature Information 164
  SSL VPN Prerequisites for the Remote User 164
  Restrictions for SSL VPN Remote User Guide 165
  Usernames and Passwords 165
  Remote User Interface 166
    Page Flow 166
    Initial Connection 167
      503 Service Unavailable Message 167
      SSL TLS Certificate 167
    Login Page 167
    Certificate Authentication 168
    Logout Page 168
    Portal Page 169
  Remote Servers 171
  Toolbar 171
    Web Browsing 172
    Moving the Toolbar 173
    Returning to the Portal Page 173
    Adding the Current Page to the Personal Bookmark Folder 173
    Displaying the Help Page 173
    Logging Out 173
  Session Timeout 174
  TCP Port Forwarding and Thin Client 174
  Tunnel Connection 176
  User-Level Bookmarking 177
    Adding a Bookmark 177
    Editing a Bookmark 177
  Internationalization 178
  Security Tips 180
    Browser Caching and Security Implications 180
    Thin Client-Recovering from Hosts File Error 180
      How SSL VPN Uses the Hosts File 180
Contents

What Happens If You Stop Thin Client Improperly 181
Troubleshooting Guidelines 183
Additional References 183
Feature Information for SSL VPN for Remote Users 185
Notices 186
  OpenSSL Open SSL Project 186
  License Issues 186
The SSL VPN feature or WebVPN provides support in the Cisco IOS software for remote user access to enterprise networks from anywhere on the Internet. Remote access is provided through a Secure Socket Layer (SSL)-enabled SSL VPN gateway. The SSL VPN gateway allows remote users to establish a secure VPN tunnel using a web browser. This feature provides a comprehensive solution that allows easy access to a broad range of web resources and web-enabled applications using native HTTP over SSL (HTTPS) browser support. SSL VPN delivers three modes of SSL VPN access: clientless, thin-client, and full-tunnel client support.

This document is primarily for system administrators. If you are a remote user, see the document “SSL VPN Remote User Guide”.

---

**Note**

The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client is introduced in Cisco IOS Release 12.4(15)T. This feature is the next-generation SSL VPN Client. If you are using Cisco software earlier than Cisco IOS Release 12.4(15)T, you should be using the SSL VPN Client and use the GUI for the SSL VPN Client when you are web browsing. However, if you are using Cisco Release 12.4(15)T or a later release, you should be using the Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client and use the GUI for Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client when you are web browsing.

---

**Note**

Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

---

- Finding Feature Information, on page 2
- Prerequisites for SSL VPN, on page 2
- Restrictions for SSL VPN, on page 3
- Information About SSL VPN, on page 5
- How to Configure SSL VPN Services on a Router, on page 36
- Configuration Examples for SSL VPN, on page 117
- Additional References for SSL VPN, on page 139
- Feature Information for SSL VPN, on page 140
Prerequisites for SSL VPN

To securely access resources on a private network behind an SSL VPN gateway, the remote user of an SSL VPN service must have the following:

- An account (login name and password)
- An SSL-enabled browser (for example, Internet Explorer, Netscape, Mozilla, or Firefox)
- Operating system support
- “Thin-client” support used for TCP port-forwarding applications requires administrative privileges on the computer of the remote user.
- “Tunnel mode” for Cisco SSL VPN requires administrative privileges for initial installation of the full-tunnel client.
- The remote user must have local administrative privileges to use thin-client or full-tunnel client features.
- The SSL VPN gateway and context configuration must be completed before a remote user can access resources on a private network behind an SSL VPN. For more information, see the “How to Configure SSL VPN Services on a Router” section.
- Access control list (ACL) Support—The time range should have already been configured.
- Single SignOn Netegrity Cookie Support—A Cisco plug-in must be installed on a Netegrity SiteMinder server.
- Licensing—In Cisco IOS Release 15.0(1)M, the SSL VPN gateway is a seat-counted licensing feature on Cisco 880, Cisco 890, Cisco 1900, Cisco 2900, and Cisco 3900 platforms. A valid license is required for a successful SSL VPN session.
- SSL VPN-supported browser—The following browsers have been verified for SSL VPN. Other browsers might not fully support SSL VPN features.

Note

Later versions of the following browsers are also supported.

- Firefox 2.0 (Windows and Linux)
- Internet Explorer 6.0 or 7.0
- Linux (Redhat RHEL 3.0 +, FEDORA 5, or FEDORA 6)
- Macintosh OS X 10.4.6
• Microsoft Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Vista
• Safari 2.0.3

Restrictions for SSL VPN

General Restrictions for SSL VPN

• URLs referred by the Macromedia Flash player cannot be modified for secure retrieval by the SSL VPN gateway.
• Cisco Secure Desktop (CSD) 3.1 and later versions are not supported.
• MS Silverlight Plugin is not supported.

PKI AAA Authorization Using the Entire Subject Name

• Some AAA servers limit the length of the username (for example, to 64 characters). As a result, the entire certificate subject name cannot be longer than the limitation of the server.

• Some AAA servers limit the available character set that may be used for the username (for example, a space [ ] and an equal sign [=] may not be acceptable). This functionality will not work for a AAA server having such a character-set limitation.

• The subject-name command in the trust point configuration may not always be the final AAA subject name. If the fully qualified domain name (FQDN), serial number, or IP address of the router are included in a certificate request, the subject name field of the issued certificate will also have these components. To turn off the components, use the fqdn, serial-number, and ip-address commands with the none keyword.

• Certificate Authority (CA) servers sometimes change the requested subject name field when they issue a certificate. For example, CA servers of some vendors switch the relative distinguished names (RDNs) in the requested subject names to the following order: CN, OU, O, L, ST, and C. However, another CA server might append the configured Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) directory root (for example, O=cisco.com) to the end of the requested subject name.

• Depending on the tools you choose for displaying a certificate, the printed order of the RDNs in the subject name could be different. Cisco IOS software always displays the least significant RDN first, but other software, such as Open Source Secure Socket Layer (OpenSSL), does the opposite. Therefore, if you are configuring a AAA server with a full DN (subject name) as the corresponding username, ensure that the Cisco IOS software style (that is, with the least-significant RDN first) is used.

Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client

The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client is not supported on Windows Mobile when the client connects to a Cisco IOS headend router (supported in Cisco IOS Release 15.0(1)M and later releases). The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client does not support the following:

• Client-side authentication (supported in Cisco IOS Release 15.0(1)M and later releases)
• Compression support
• IPsec
• IPv6 VPN access
• Localization
• Sequencing
• Standalone mode (supported in Cisco IOS Release 12.4(20)T and later releases)

Thin-Client Control List Support

Although there is no limitation on the maximum number of filtering rules that can be applied for each ACL entry, keeping the number below 50 should have no impact on router performance.

HTTP Proxy

The HTTP Proxy feature works only with Microsoft Internet Explorer.
The HTTP Proxy feature will not work if the browser proxy setup cannot be modified because of any security policies that have been placed on the client workstation.

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol


Features Not Supported on the Cisco IOS SSL VPN

The following features are not supported on the Cisco IOS SSL VPN:
• Application Profile Customization Framework (APCF): an XML-based rule set for clientless SSL VPN
• Cisco Unified Communications Manager (Cisco UCM) 8.0.1 VPN-enabled 7900 series IP phones
• Dynamic Access Policies (DAP)
• Java and ActiveX Client Server Plugins
• On Board Built-in Single Sign On
• Portal Page Customization
• SharePoint Support
• Smart Tunnels
• Support for External Statistics Reporting and Monitoring Tools
• Using Smartcard for Authentication (supported in Cisco IOS Release 15.0(1)M and later releases)
• The following features were introduced in the AnyConnect 2.5.217 release:
  • AnyConnect Profile Editor
The features introduced in AnyConnect 2.5 are not supported although you can connect to a Cisco IOS headend using AnyConnect 2.5. However, features introduced in AnyConnect 2.4 and earlier releases are supported when you are connected to a Cisco IOS headend using AnyConnect 2.5 or AnyConnect 3.0.

Information About SSL VPN

SSL VPN Overview

Cisco IOS SSL VPN provides SSL VPN remote-access connectivity from almost any Internet-enabled location using only a web browser that locally supports SSL encryption. This feature allows your company to extend access to any authorized user/corporate resources to its secure enterprise network by providing remote-access connectivity from any Internet-enabled location.

Cisco IOS SSL VPN can also support access from noncorporate-owned machines, including home computers, Internet kiosks, and wireless hot spots. These locations are difficult places to deploy and manage VPN client software and the remote configuration required to support IPsec VPN connections.

The figure below shows how a mobile worker (for example, a lawyer at the courthouse) can access protected resources from a main office and its branch offices. Site-to-site IPsec connectivity between the main and remote sites is unaltered. The mobile worker needs only Internet access and supported software (web browser and operating system) to securely access the corporate network.
SSL VPN delivers the following modes of SSL VPN access:

- **Clientless**—Clientless mode provides secure access to private web resources and will provide access to web content. This mode is useful for accessing most content that you would expect to access in a web browser, such as Internet access, databases, and online tools that employ a web interface.

- **Thin client (port-forwarding Java applet)**—Thin-client mode extends the capability of the cryptographic functions of the web browser to enable remote access to TCP-based applications such as Post Office Protocol version 3 (POP3), Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP), Internet Message Access protocol (IMAP), Telnet, and Secure Shell (SSH).

- **Tunnel mode**—Full-tunnel client mode offers extensive application support through its dynamically downloaded Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client (next-generation SSL VPN Client) for SSL VPN. Full tunnel client mode delivers a lightweight, centrally configured and easy-to-support SSL VPN tunneling client that provides network layer access to virtually any application.

SSL VPN will not work if `ip http secure-server` is enabled.

SSL VPN application accessibility is somewhat constrained relative to IPsec VPNs; however, SSL-based VPNs provide access to a growing set of common software applications, including web page access, web-enabled services such as file access, e-mail, and TCP-based applications (by way of a downloadable thin-client applet). SSL-based VPN requires slight changes to user workflow because some applications are presented through a web browser interface, not through their native GUI. The advantage for SSL VPN comes from accessibility from almost any Internet-connected system without the need to install additional desktop software.

**Licensing**

SSL VPN supports the following types of licenses:
• Permanent licenses—No usage period is associated with these licenses. All permanent licenses are node locked and validated during installation and usage.

• Evaluation licenses—These are metered licenses that are valid for a limited period. The usage period of a license is based on a system clock. The evaluation licenses are built into the image and are not node locked. The evaluation licenses are used only when there are no permanent, extension or grace period licenses available for a feature. An end-user license agreement (EULA) has to be accepted before using an evaluation license.

• Extension licenses—Extension licenses are node-locked metered licenses. These licenses are installed using the management interfaces on the device. A EULA has to be accepted as part of installation.

• Grace-rehost licenses—Grace period licenses are node locked metered licenses. These licenses are installed on the device as part of the rehost operation. A EULA has to be accepted as a part of the rehost operation.

For all the license types, except the evaluation license, a EULA has to be accepted during the license installation. This means that all the license types except the evaluation license are activated after installation. In the case of an evaluation license, a EULA is presented during an SSL VPN policy configuration or an SSL VPN profile configuration.

An SSL VPN session corresponds to a successful login of a user to the SSL VPN service. An SSL VPN session is created when a valid license is installed and the user credentials are successfully validated. On a successful user validation, a request is made to the licensing module to get a seat. An SSL VPN session is created only when the request is successful. If a valid license is not installed, the SSL VPN policy configuration and SSL VPN profile configuration can be successful, but the user cannot log in successfully. When multiple policies and profiles are configured, the total number of sessions are equal to the total sessions allowed by the license. A seat count is released when a session is deleted. A session is deleted because of reasons such as log out by the user, session idle timeout or Dead Peer Detection (DPD) failure.

Rarely a few sessions which do not have active connections may appear to be consuming licenses. This typically denotes that this is a transition state and the session will get expired soon.

The same user can create multiple sessions and for each session a seat count is reserved. The seat reservation does not happen in the following cases:

• Full-tunnel session creation from a browser session.

• Full-tunnel session is up and a crypto rekey is done.

When the total active sessions are equal to the maximum license count of the current active license, no more new sessions are allowed.

The reserved seat count or session is released when the following occurs:

• a user logs out.

• a DPD failure happens.

• a session timeout occurs.

• an idle timeout occurs.

• a session is cleared administratively using the clear webvpn session command.
• A user is disconnected from the tunnel.
• A profile is removed even when there are active sessions.

You can use the `show webvpn license` command to display the available count and the current usage. To display the current license type and time period left in case of a nonpermanent license, use the `show license` command. To get information related to license operations, events, and errors, use the `debug webvpn license` command.

New Cisco IOS SSL VPN licenses that are generated are cumulative. Therefore the old licenses become inactive when a new license is applied. For example, when you are upgrading your license from 10 counts to 20 counts (an increase of 10 counts on the current 10 counts), Cisco provides a single 20 count license. The old license for 10 counts is not required when a permanent license for a higher count is available. However, the old license will exist in an inactive state as there is no reliable method to clear the old license.

**Licensing in Cisco IOS Release 15.x**

Starting in Cisco IOS Release 15.0(1)M, the SSL VPN gateway is a seat-counted licensing feature on the Cisco 880, Cisco 890, Cisco 1900, Cisco 2900, and Cisco 3900 platforms. A license count is associated with each license, and the count indicates the instances of the feature available for use in the system. In the case of SSL VPN, a seat refers to the maximum number of sessions allowed at a time.

You can get the license at [http://www.cisco.com/go/license](http://www.cisco.com/go/license).


For migrating from any Cisco IOS 12.4T release to Cisco IOS 15.x release, use the license migration tool at [https://tools.cisco.com/SWIFT/Licensing/LicenseAdminServlet/migrateLicense](https://tools.cisco.com/SWIFT/Licensing/LicenseAdminServlet/migrateLicense).

In Cisco IOS Release 15.1(4)M1 and later releases, a Crypto Export Restrictions Manager (CERM) license is reserved only after the user logs in. If you have an Integrated Services Router Generation 2 (ISR G2) router with a CERM license, you must upgrade to Cisco IOS Release 15.1(4)M1 or later releases. Before Cisco IOS Release 15.1(4)M1, a CERM license is reserved for every SSL or Transport Layer Security (TLS) session.

**Modes of Remote Access**

**Remote Access Overview**

End-user login and authentication is performed by the web browser to a secure gateway using an HTTP request. This process creates a session that is referenced by a cookie. After authentication, the remote user is shown a portal page that allows access to the SSL VPN networks. All requests sent by the browser include the authentication cookie. The portal page provides all the resources available on the internal networks. For example, the portal page could provide a link to allow the remote user to download and install a thin-client Java applet (for TCP port forwarding) or a tunneling client.
Clientless Mode

In a clientless mode, the remote user accesses the internal or corporate network using the web browser on the client machine. The PC of the remote user must run the Windows 2000, Windows XP or Linux operating systems.

The following applications are supported in a clientless mode:

- Web browsing (using HTTP and HTTPS)—provides a URL box and a list of web server links in the portal page that allows the remote user to browse the web.
- File sharing [using common Internet file system (CIFS)]—provides a list of file server links in the portal page that allows the remote user to do the following operations:
  - Browse a network (listing of domains)
  - Browse a domain (listing of servers)
  - Browse a server (listing of shares)
  - List the files in a share
  - Create a new file
  - Create a directory
  - Rename a directory
  - Update a file
  - Download a file
  - Remove a file
  - Rename a file

Note

Linux requires that the Samba application is installed before CIFS file shares can be remotely accessed.

- Web-based e-mail, such as Microsoft Outlook Web Access (OWA) 2003 (using HTTP and HTTPS) with Web Distributed Authoring and Versioning (WebDAV) extensions—provides a link that allows the remote user to connect to the exchange server and read web-based e-mail.

Thin-Client Mode

Thin-client mode, also called TCP port forwarding, assumes that the client application uses TCP to connect to a well-known server and port. In thin-client mode, the remote user downloads a Java applet by clicking the link provided on the portal page, or the Java applet is downloaded automatically (see the Options for Configuring HTTP Proxy and the Portal Page section). The Java applet acts as a TCP proxy on the client machine for the services that you configure on the gateway.

The applications that are supported in thin-client mode are mainly e-mail-based (SMTP, POP3, and Internet Map Access Protocol version 4 [IMAP4]) applications.

Note

The TCP port-forwarding proxy works only with the Sun Microsystems Java Runtime Environment (JRE) version 1.4 or later versions. A Java applet is loaded through the browser that verifies the JRE version. The Java applet will refuse to run if a compatible JRE version is not detected.
The Java applet initiates an HTTP request from the remote user client to the SSL VPN gateway. The name and port number of the internal e-mail server is included in the HTTP request (POST or CONNECT). The SSL VPN gateway creates a TCP connection to that internal e-mail server and port.

The Java applet starts a new SSL connection for every client connection.

You should observe the following restrictions when using thin-client mode:

- The remote user must allow the Java applet to download and install.
- You cannot use thin-client mode for applications such as FTP, where the ports are negotiated dynamically. You can use TCP port forwarding only with static ports.

---

**Note**

There is a known compatibility issue with the encryption type and Java. If the Java port-forwarding applet does not download properly and the configuration line `ssl encryption 3des-sha1 aes-sha1` is present, you should remove the line from the WebVPN gateway subconfiguration.

---

**Options for Configuring HTTP Proxy and the Portal Page**

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(11)T, administrators have more options for configuring the HTTP proxy and the portal page. If HTTP proxy is enabled, the Java applet acts as the proxy for the browser of the user, thereby connecting the client workstation with the gateway. The home page of the user (as defined by the user group) is opened automatically or, if configured by the administrator, the user is directed to a new website.

HTTP proxy supports both HTTP and HTTPS.

**Benefits of Configuring HTTP Proxy**

HTTP supports all client-side web technologies (including HTML, Cascading Style Sheets [CSS], JavaScript, VBScript, ActiveX, Java, and flash), HTTP Digest authentication, and client certificate authentication. Remote users can use their own bookmarks, and there is no limit on cookies. Because there is no mangling involved and the client can cache the objects, performance is much improved over previous options for configuring the HTTP proxy and portal page.

**Illustrations of Port Forwarding with and Without an HTTP Proxy Configuration**

The figure below illustrates TCP port forwarding without HTTP proxy configured.
In the figure above, the following steps occur:

1. User downloads the proxy applet.
2. Applet updates the registry to add HTTP as a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) transport.
3. Applet examines the registry to determine the exchange (and local catalog) server and create server entries that refer to those servers.
4. Applet opens local port 80 and listens for connections.
5. User starts Outlook, and Outlook connects to 10.0.0.254:80.
6. Applet opens a connection to the secure gateway and delivers the requests from Outlook.
7. Secure gateway examines the requests to determine the endpoint exchange server.
8. Data flows from Outlook, through the applet and the secure gateway, to the exchange server.
10. User closes the applet. Before closing, the applet undoes configuration Steps 3 and 4.

The figure below illustrates TCP port forwarding when HTTP proxy is configured.
In the figure above, the following steps occur:

1. Proxy applet is downloaded automatically.
2. Applet saves the original proxy configuration of the browser.
3. Applet updates the proxy configuration of the browser to be the local loopback address with an available local port (by default, port 8080).
4. Applet opens the available local port and listens for connections.
5. Applet, if so configured, opens the home page of the user, or the user browses to a new website.
6. Applet accepts and looks at the HTTP or HTTPS request to determine the destination web server.
7. Applet opens a connection to the secure gateway and delivers the requests from the browser.
8. Secure gateway examines the requests to determine the endpoint web server.
9. Data flows from the browser, through the applet and the secure gateway, to the web server.
10. User closes applet. Before closing, the applet undoes configuration Steps 2 and 3.

Note
HTTP proxy can also be enabled on an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server. See the table SSL VPN RADIUS Attribute-Value Pairs in the Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN section (port-forward-http-proxy and port-forward-http-proxy-url attributes).

Tunnel Mode
In a typical clientless remote access scenario, remote users establish an SSL tunnel to move data to and from the internal networks at the application layer (for example, web and e-mail). In tunnel mode, remote users use an SSL tunnel to move data at the network (IP) layer. Therefore, tunnel mode supports most IP-based applications. Tunnel mode supports many popular corporate applications (for example, Microsoft Outlook, Microsoft Exchange, Lotus Notes E-mail, and Telnet).

The tunnel connection is determined by the group policy configuration. The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client is downloaded and installed on the remote user PC, and the tunnel connection is established when the remote user logs into the SSL VPN gateway.

By default, the Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client is removed from the client PC after the connection is closed. However, you have the option to keep the Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client installed on the client PC.

SSL VPN Features
Access Control Enhancements
Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(20)T, administrators can configure automatic authentication and authorization for users. Users provide their usernames and passwords via the gateway page URL and do not have to reenter their usernames and passwords from the login page. Authorization is enhanced to support more generic authorization, including local authorization. In previous releases, only RADIUS authorization was supported.
For information about configuring this feature, see the Configuring Automatic Authentication and Authorization section.

**SSL VPN Client-Side Certificate-Based Authentication**

This feature enables SSL VPN to authenticate clients based on the client’s AAA username and password and also supports WebVPN gateway authentication of clients using AAA certificates.

SSL VPN Client-Side Certificate-Based Authentication feature includes the following features:

**Certificate-Only Authentication and Authorization Mode**

Certificate-only authorization requires the user to provide a authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authentication certificate as part of the WebVPN request, but does not require the username and password for authorization. The user requests WebVPN access with the AAA authentication certificate from the WebVPN gateway. The WebVPN gateway validates the identity of the client using the AAA authentication certificate presented to it. The WebVPN extracts the username from the AAA authentication certificate presented to it and uses it as the username in the AAA request. AAA authentication and AAA authorization are then completed with a hard-coded password. To configure certificate-only authorization use the `authentication certificate` command.

Users also need to configure public key infrastructure (PKI) AAA authorization using the entire subject name to retrieve the user name from the subject name in the certificate and use it for authorization. When using PKI AAA functionality, users sometimes have attribute-value (AV) pairs that are different from those of every other user. As a result, a unique username is required for each user. The PKI AAA authorization using the entire subject name provides users with the ability to query the AAA server using the entire subject name from the certificate as a unique AAA username.

Users should ensure that the AAA username being used by the device is the same as the username on the AAA server. Users can use the `debug crypto pki transactions` command to see which username is being used by the device.

**Two-Factor Authentication and Authorization Mode**

Two-factor authorization requires the user to request WebVPN access and present a AAA authentication certificate. The AAA authentication certificate is validated and the client’s identity is verified. The WebVPN gateway then presents the login page to the user. The user enters their username and password and WebVPN sends AAA authentication and AAA authorization requests to the AAA server. The AAA authentication list and the AAA authorization lists configured on the server are then used for authentication and authorization. To configure two-factor authentication and authorization mode use the `authentication certificate aaa` command.

*Note*  
If the `username-prefill` command is configured, the username textbox on the login page will be disabled. The user will be asked only for their password on the login page.

**Identification of WebVPN Context at Runtime Using Certificate Map Match Rules**

Certificate map match rules are used by SSL VPN to identify the WebVPN context at runtime. The WebVPN context is required for AAA authentication and authorization mode and trustpoint configuration. When the user does not provide the WebVPN context, the identification of the WebVPN context at runtime is possible using certificate map matching by matching the certificate presented by the client with the certificate map match rules. To configure certificate map matching in WebVPN use the `match-certificate` command.
Support for AnyConnect Client to Implement Certificate Matching Based on Client Profile Attributes

Cisco AnyConnect client has certificate match functionality allowing it to select a suitable certificate while initiating tunnel connection with SSL VPN. In the case of standalone mode, the certificate selection is made based on the certificate match. When selecting a certificate, Cisco AnyConnect client can select the appropriate certificate based on the AnyConnect client profile attributes. This requires SSL VPN to support AnyConnect client profiles. The profile file is imported after modification by the administrator using the svc profile command. To create an AnyConnect client profile use the template that appears after installing Cisco AnyConnect in this location: \Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Cisco\CiscoAnyConnectVPNClient\Profile\AnyConnectProfile.tmpl.

**Note**

When an AnyConnect client profile is modified and is uploaded to the router with the same name, the profile on the client is not updated unless the cache is cleared/reset by re-applying the crypto vpn anyconnect profile SSL flash:/SSL.xml command.

The following are the certificate match types available with Cisco AnyConnect client:

**Certificate Key Usage Matching**

Certificate key usage matching offers a set of constraints based on the broad types of operations that can be performed with a given certificate.

**Extended Certificate Key Usage Matching**

This matching allows an administrator to limit the certificates that can be used by the client based on the Extended Key Usage fields.

**Certificate Distinguished Name Mapping**

This certificate matching capability allows an administrator to limit the certificates that can be used by the client to those matching the specified criteria and criteria match conditions. This includes the ability to specify that a certificate must or must not have a specified string and also if wild-carding for the string should be allowed.

**AnyConnect Client Support**

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(20)T, AnyConnect Client support is added for several client-side platforms, such as Microsoft Windows, Apple-Mac, and Linux. The ability to install AnyConnect in a standalone mode is also added. In addition, the Release 12.4(20)T allows you to install multiple AnyConnect VPN client packages to a gateway. For information on configuring multiple packages, see the “Configuring the SSL VPN Gateway to Distribute CSD and Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Package Files” section.

**Note**

The IOS WebVPN gateway can randomly generate syslog and debug errors when an AnyConnect connection is established. You can ignore these errors as the client is able to connect and send or receive data traffic successfully.
Application ACL Support

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(11)T, the Application ACL Support feature provides administrators with the flexibility to fine-tune access control at the application layer level, for example, on the basis of a URL.

For information about configuring this feature, see the Configuring ACL Rules section, and Associating an ACL Attribute with a Policy Group section.

Automatic Applet Download

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(9)T, administrators have the option of automatically downloading the port-forwarding Java applet. The Automatic Applet Download feature must be configured on a group policy basis.

---

**Note**

Users still have to allow the Java applet to be downloaded. The dialog box appears, asking for permission.

To configure the automatic download, see the Configuring an SSL VPN Policy Group section.

Backend HTTP Proxy

The Backend HTTP Proxy feature, added in Cisco IOS Release 12.4(20)T, allows administrators to route user requests through a backend HTTP proxy, providing more flexibility and control than routing requests through internal web servers. This feature adds the following new AAA attributes:

- http-proxy-server
- http-proxy-server-port

For information about configuring this feature, see the Configuring a Backend HTTP Proxy section.

Front-Door VRF Support

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(15)T, front-door virtual routing and forwarding (FVRF) support, coupled with the already supported internal virtual routing and forwarding (IVRF), provides for increased security. The feature allows the SSL VPN gateway to be fully integrated into a Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) or non-MPLS network (wherever the VRFs are deployed). The virtual gateway can be placed into a VRF that is separate from the Internet to avoid internal MPLS and IP network exposure. This placement reduces the vulnerability of the router by separating the Internet routes or the global routing table. Clients can now reach the gateway by way of the FVRF, which can be separate from the global VRF. The backend, or IVRF, functionality remains the same.

This FVRF feature provides for overlapping IP addresses.

The figure below is a scenario in which FVRF has been applied.
Full-Tunnel Cisco Express Forwarding Support

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(20)T, Full-Tunnel Cisco Express Forwarding support is added for better throughput performance than in earlier releases. This feature is enabled by default. To turn off full-tunnel Cisco Express Forwarding support, use the `no webvpn cef` command.

Note
To take full advantage of Cisco Express Forwarding support, the hardware crypto engine is required.

For sample output showing Cisco Express Forwarding-processed packets, see the Example: Cisco Express Forwarding-Processed Packets.

Network Address Translation (NAT) configuration is sometimes used to forward TCP port 443 traffic destined to the WAN interface of a router through an internal webserver.

There are two methods of implementing Cisco IOS SSL VPN on a preexisting NAT configuration. The Cisco-recommended method is to use the WebVPN gateway IP address as the secondary address on the WAN interface. This method helps improve the WebVPN throughput performance. The following is a sample configuration of the recommended method on Cisco IOS SSL VPN:

```
interface GigabitEthernet 0/0
   ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
   ip address 10.1.1.2 255.255.255.0 secondary
```
webvpn gateway ssl_vpn
  ip address 10.1.1.2 port 443

In the second method the WebVPN gateway uses a private IP address configured on a loopback interface and performs a NAT operation to convert the private IP address to a publically routable address. The following configuration is not supported on Cisco IOS SSL VPN because this configuration causes packets to become process-switched instead of being Cisco Express Forwarding-switched:

interface Loopback 10
  ip address 192.0.2.1 255.255.255.0
!
interface GigabitEthernet 0/0
  description WAN interface
  ip address 10.1.1.1 255.0.0.0
!
  ip nat inside source static 192.0.2.1 10.1.1.2
webvpn gateway ssl_vpn
  ip address 192.0.2.1 port 443

GUI Enhancements

In Cisco IOS Release 12.4(15)T, ergonomic improvements are made to the GUI of the Cisco IOS SSL VPN gateway. The improved customization of the user interface provides for greater flexibility and the ability to tailor portal pages for individualized views. Enhancements are made to the following web screens:

Login Screen

The figure below is an example of a typical login screen.
The maximum length of the password is 32 characters.

**Banner**

The banner is a small popup box that appears before the portal page displays and after a user is logged in. The message in the popup box is configured using the `banner` command.
Customization of a Login Page

Login screens can be customized by an administrator. The following figure shows the fields that can be customized.


Portal Page

The portal page (see the figure below) is the main page for the SSL VPN functionality. You can customize this page to contain the following:
• Custom logo (the default is the Cisco bridge logo)
• Custom title (the default is “WebVPN Services”)
• Custom banner (the default is an empty string)
• Custom colors (the default is a combination of white and greens)
• List of web server links (customizable)

**Note**
The Bookmark links are listed under the Personal folder, and the server links are listed under Network File in the figure below.

• URL entry box (may be present or can be hidden using the `hide-url-bar` command)
• Thin Client link (may or may not be present)

**Note**
The Application Access box allows you to download and install the Tunnel Connection and Thin Client Application.

• Links for Help, Home (that is, the portal page), and Logout

Items that you have not configured are not displayed on the portal page.

**Note**
E-mail access is supported by thin-client mode, which is downloaded using the Thin Client link.

The figure below is an example of a WebVPN portal page.

*Figure 8: WebVPN Portal Page*
Customization of a Portal Page

Portal pages can be customized by an administrator. The following figure shows various fields, including the fields that can be customized by an administrator. The fields that can be customized by an administrator are as follows:

- Title
- Logo
- Secondary color
- Administrator-defined bookmarks
- Color

Figure 9: Portal Page with Callouts of Various Fields, Including Those That Can Be customized
The table below provides information about various fields on the portal page. For information about setting elements such as color or titles, see command information in the Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands A to C, Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands D to L, Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands M to R, and Cisco IOS Security Command Reference: Commands S to Z for the color, functions, hide-url-bar, logo, port-forward, title, title-color, secondary-color, secondary-text-color, and url-list commands.

Table 1: Information About Fields on the Portal Page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User-level bookmark add icon</td>
<td>When a user selects this icon, a dialog box is added so that a new bookmark can be added to the Personal folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network File location bar</td>
<td>Allows a user to enter the file server here. The functions file-access and functions file-entry commands must be configured for the input box to display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Header</td>
<td>Shares the same color value as the title.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last login</td>
<td>Time stamp of the last login.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browse network</td>
<td>Allows a user to browse the file network. The functions file-access and functions file-browse commands must be configured for the icon to appear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel Connection</td>
<td>Allows a user to choose when to start the tunnel connection by configuring the functions svc-enabled command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port forwarding</td>
<td>Downloads the applet and starts port forwarding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User-level bookmark edit icon</td>
<td>Allows a user to edit or delete an existing bookmark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User-level bookmarks</td>
<td>Allows a user to add a bookmark by using the plus icon on the bookmark panel or toolbar. See the document “SSL VPN Remote User Guide” for information about the toolbar. A new window displays when the link is clicked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrator-defined bookmarks</td>
<td>Does not allow a user to edit an administrator-defined URL lists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URL address bar</td>
<td>A new window displays when a user selects Go.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Internationalization

The Internationalization feature provides multilanguage support for messages initiated by the headend for SSL VPN clients, such as Cisco Secure Desktop (CSD) and SSL VPN Client (SVC). With the Internationalization feature, administrators can import their own attribute files in an XML format so that other languages can be imported using an editor that supports multilanguages.
The figure below shows a portal page in English. Users can select any language you have imported for certain SSL VPN web pages (login message, title page, and URL lists).

*Figure 10: Portal Page in English*

The figure below shows that an administrator has imported files in Japanese; a user has selected Japanese as the language for certain SSL VPN web pages (login message, title, and URL lists).
Max-User Limit Message

A “Max user limit reached” message displays when a user logs in to a Web VPN context that has already reached the maximum users limit.

Netegrity Cookie-Based Single SignOn Support

The Netegrity SiteMinder product provides a Single SignOn feature that allows a user to log in in a single time for various web applications. In this feature, a cookie is set in your browser for the first time when you are prompted to log in so that only a one-time login is required to access various web applications.

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(11)T, Netegrity cookie-based SSO is integrated with SSL VPN. It allows administrators to configure an SSO server that sets a SiteMinder cookie in a user’s browser when the user initially logs in. This cookie is validated by a SiteMinder agent on subsequent user requests to resources that are protected by a SiteMinder realm. The agent decrypts the cookie and verifies user authentication.

For information about configuring SSO Netegrity Cookie Support and associating it with a policy group using the CLI, see the Configuring SSO Netegrity Cookie Support for a Virtual Context section and Associating an SSO Server with a Policy Group section.

The following example shows that an SSO server can also be associated with a policy group using RADIUS attributes:

```
webvpn:sso-server-name=server1
```
For a list of RADIUS attribute-value (AV) pairs that support SSL VPN, see the Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN section.

**NTLM Authentication**

NT LAN Manager (NTLM) is supported for SSL VPN effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(9)T. The feature is configured by default.

**RADIUS Accounting**

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(9)T, this feature provides for RADIUS accounting of SSL VPN user sessions.

For information about configuring SSL VPN RADIUS accounting for SSL VPN user sessions, see the Configuring RADIUS Accounting for SSL VPN User Sessions section.

For more information about configuring RADIUS accounting, see the “Configuring RADIUS” chapter in the Cisco IOS Security Configuration Guide: Securing User Services.

For a list of RADIUS AV pairs that support SSL VPN, see the Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN section.

**Stateless High Availability with Hot Standby Router Protocol**

Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP) provides high network availability by routing IP traffic from hosts on Ethernet networks without having to rely on the availability of any single router. HSRP is particularly useful for hosts that do not support a router discovery protocol, such as ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP), and that do not have the functionality to switch to a new router when their selected router reloads or loses power. Without this functionality, a router that loses its default gateway because of a router failure is unable to communicate with the network.

HSRP is configurable on LAN interfaces using standby CLI. It is possible to use the standby IP address from an interface as the local IPsec identity, or local tunnel endpoint.

You can use the standby IP address as the SSL VPN gateway address to apply failover to VPN routers by using HSRP. Remote SSL VPN users connect to the local VPN gateway using the standby address that belongs to the active device in the HSRP group. In the event of a failover, the standby device takes over ownership of the standby IP address and begins to service remote VPN users.

Using the Stateless High Availability with Hot Standby Router Protocol feature, the remote user has to be aware of only the HSRP standby address instead of a list of gateway addresses.

The figure below shows the enhanced HSRP functionality topology. Traffic is serviced by the active Router P, the active device in the standby group. In the event of failover, traffic is diverted to Router S, the original standby device. Router S assumes the role of the new active router and takes ownership of the standby IP address.
For information about configuring Stateless High Availability with HSRP, see the Configuring Stateless High Availability with HSRP for SSL VPN.

---

**Note**

In the case of a failover, HSRP does not facilitate SSL VPN state information transfer between VPN gateways. Without this state transfer, existing SSL VPN sessions with the remote users will be deleted, requiring users to reauthenticate and establish SSL VPN sessions with the new active gateway.

---

**TCP Port Forwarding and Thin Client**

---

**Note**

The TCP Port Forwarding and Thin Client feature requires the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) version 1.4 or later releases to properly support SSL connections.

---

**Note**

Because this feature requires installing JRE and configuring the local clients, and because doing so requires administrator permissions on the local system, it is unlikely that remote users will be able to use applications when they connect from public remote systems.

---

When the remote user clicks the Start button of the Thin Client Application (under “Application Access”), a new window is displayed. This window initiates the downloading of a port-forwarding applet. Another window is then displayed. This window asks the remote user to verify the certificate with which this applet is signed. When the remote user accepts the certificate, the applet starts running, and port-forwarding entries are displayed (see the figure below). The number of active connections and bytes that are sent and received is also listed on this window.
When remote users launch Thin Client, their system may display a dialog box regarding digital certificates, and this dialog box may appear behind other browser windows. If the remote user connection hangs, tell the remote user to minimize the browser windows to check for this dialog box.

You should have configured IP addresses, Domain Name System (DNS) names, and port numbers for the e-mail servers. The remote user can then launch the e-mail client, which is configured to contact the e-mail servers and send and receive e-mails. POP3, IMAP, and SMTP protocols are supported.

The window attempts to close automatically if the remote user is logged out using JavaScript. If the session terminated and a new port forwarding connection is established, the applet displays an error message.

Figure 13: TCP Port Forwarding Page

Users should always close the Thin Client window when finished using applications by clicking the close icon. Failure to quit the window properly can cause Thin Client or the applications to be disabled. See the “Application Access—Recovering from Hosts File Errors” section in the document SSL VPN Remote User Guide.

The table below lists remote system requirements for Thin Client.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remote User System Requirements</th>
<th>Specifications or Use Suggestions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Client applications installed.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Remote User System Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirement</th>
<th>Specifications or Use Suggestions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cookies enabled on browser.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrator privileges.</td>
<td>You must be the local administrator on your PC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun Microsystems JRE version 1.4 or later installed.</td>
<td>SSL VPN automatically checks for JRE whenever the remote user starts Thin Client. If it is necessary to install JRE, a popup window displays directing remote users to a site where it is available.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Client applications configured, if necessary. | To configure the client application, use the locally mapped IP address and port number of the server. To find this information, do the following:  
  - Start SSL VPN on the remote system and click the Thin-Client link on the SSL VPN home page. The Thin-Client window is displayed.  
  - In the Name column, find the name of the server that you want to use, and then identify its corresponding client IP address and port number (in the Local column).  
  - Use this IP address and port number to configure the client application. The configuration steps vary for each client application. |
| Windows XP SP2 patch.                | If you are running Windows XP SP2, you must install a patch from Microsoft that is available at the following address:  
  http://support.microsoft.com/?kbid=884020  
  This is a known Microsoft issue. |

### URL Obfuscation

The URL Obfuscation feature provides administrators with the ability to obfuscate, or mask, sensitive portions of an enterprise URL, such as IP addresses, hostnames, or part numbers. For example, if URL masking is configured for a user, the URL in the address bar could have the port and hostname portion obfuscated, as in this example:

https://slvpn-gateway.examplecompany.com/http/cF9HxnBjRmSFEzBWpDtfXfigzL559MQo51Qj/cgi-bin/submit.p

For information about configuring this feature, see the [Associating an SSO Server with a Policy Group](#) section.

### URL Rewrite Splitter

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(20)T, the URL Rewrite Splitter feature allows administrators to mangle selective URLs. Mangling is a CPU-intensive and time-consuming process, so mangling only selective URLs can result in a savings of memory and time.

For information about configuring this feature, see the [Configuring a URL Rewrite Splitter](#) section.
User-Level Bookmarking

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(15)T, users can bookmark URLs while connected through an SSL VPN tunnel. Users can access the bookmarked URLs by clicking the URLs.

User-level bookmarking is turned by default. There is no way to turn it off. To set the storage location, administrators can use the `user-profile location` command. If the `user-profile location` command is not configured, the location `flash:/webvpn/{context name}/` is used.

Virtual Templates

A virtual template enables SSL VPN to interoperate with IP features such as Network Address Translation (NAT), firewall, and policy-based routing.

For information about configuring this feature, see Configuring a Virtual Template section.

License String Support for the 7900 VPN Client

The Cisco IOS SSL VPN accepts license strings from Cisco IP Phones. Cisco IOS VPN concentrators support the VPN license type `linksys-phone` in order to support the Galactica VPN client on 79x 2 and 79x 5 phones.

In the case of a transformer platform, response to the license message (`linksys-phone`) will succeed if the license requirements are met. However, an Integrated Services Routers (ISR) router must always respond with a success message so that the Galactica VPN client can attempt to establish a VPN connection.

SSL VPN DVTI Support

The SSL VPN DVTI Support feature adds Dynamic Virtual Tunnel Interface (DVTI) support to the Secure Socket Layer Virtual Private Network (SSL VPN) and hence enables seamless interoperability with IP features such as Firewall, Network Address Translation (NAT), access Control Lists (ACLs), and Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF). This feature also provides DVTI support, which allows IP feature configuration on a per-tunnel basis.

SSL VPN provides three modes to access a VPN: clientless, thin client, and full tunnel. The full tunnel mode uses an internal virtual interface to route the traffic to and from the SSL VPN tunnel. Before the SSL VPN DVTI Support feature was introduced, the virtual interface was created during the SSL VPN virtual interface configuration and users were not allowed to apply IP features to the SSL VPN traffic.

The SSL VPN DVTI Support feature uses a virtual template infrastructure to provide DVTI support for SSL VPN. IP features are configured in a virtual template that is associated with the SSL VPN or WebVPN context. The IP features configured in the virtual template are used to create a virtual access interface that is internally used to tunnel SSL VPN traffic. Virtual templates in a WebVPN context are applied in two ways: per-context and per-tunnel.

---

**Note**

You can configure any IP feature with SSL VPN. However, in the Cisco IOS Release 15.1(1)T, interoperability has been tested only with the firewall, NAT, ACL, policy-based routing (PBR), and VRF IP features.

The SSL VPN DVTI Support feature contains the following:

**Prerequisites for SSL VPN DVTI Support**

- You must have the IP features configured in a virtual template. See the Configuring a Virtual Template section for information on configuring a virtual template.
• SSL VPN must be able to fetch configurations from the AAA server.
• The SSL VPN gateway and context configurations must be enabled and operational.
• If VRF is needed, configure it before creating the virtual template.

Restrictions for SSL VPN DVTI Support

• In order for a virtual template to work with SSL VPN, the `ip unnumbered` command must be configured on the virtual template.

Virtual Template Infrastructure

A generic interface template service is required with features such as stackability, Virtual Private Dialup Network (VPDN), Multilink PPP (MLP), and virtual profiles. Virtual template interface service delivers a generic interface template service. The virtual template interface, command buffer, and virtual access interface functions enables you to populate a virtual-access interface using a pre-defined configuration that is stored in a virtual template interface and security servers such as TACACS+ and RADIUS.

For example, in stackability, a virtual template interface is assigned to a stack group. Whenever a stack member needs a virtual interface, the virtual template interface service is called by a member to obtain a virtual access interface cloned with the same configuration as the configuration of the assigned virtual template interface.

In a virtual profile, the per-user configuration can be stored in a security server. That is, when the user dials in, the desired configuration can be cloned into the virtual access interface associated with the user. The virtual template service provides an application programming interface (API) for a virtual profile to clone a buffer of commands to a virtual access interface. The virtual profile does the actual interaction with the security server.

---

**Note**

If you do not configure a virtual template, then the default virtual template (VT0) will be used for cloning the virtual access interface.

**SSL VPN Phase-4 Features**

The SSL VPN Phase-4 Features feature provides the following enhancements to the Cisco IOS Secure Sockets Layer Virtual Private Network (SSL VPN):

• ACL support for split tunneling
• IP mask for IP pool address assignment
• Undoing the renaming of AnyConnect or SSL VPN Client (SVC) Full Tunnel Cisco package during installation on a Cisco IOS router
• Adding per-user SSL VPN session statistics
• "Start before logon" option for the Cisco IOS SSL VPN headend

The SSL VPN Phase-4 features contains the following:

**Prerequisites for SSL VPN Phase-4 Features**

You must use a valid K9 image to configure the SSL VPN Phase-4 Features.
Full Tunnel Package

When you install the AnyConnect or SVC full tunnel package using the crypto vpn command on the Cisco IOS headend, the package name gets renamed to svc_pkg_<number>. This renaming omits package information and Base Station Ethernet (BSE) operating system information, and thus makes you difficult to remove or uninstall the package. This functionality was modified in Cisco IOS Release 15.1(1)T to retain the name during installation of the package.

The limit on the filename size on the Cisco IOS file system (IFS) is 120 bytes. Unless the package name is greater than this limit, the package name does not change. If the filename exceeds this limit, then the installation fails. The following error message is displayed on the router console:

Error: Package name exceeds 120 characters

SSL VPN per-User Statistics

Per-user statistics functionality provides an option to filter the cumulative statistics on a per-user basis for the Cisco IOS SSL VPN sessions. Use the show webvpn session user command to enable this functionality. This command is applicable only for user session statistics and tunnel statistics. See Cisco Cisco IOS Security Command Reference for more information on the show webvpn session command.

DTLS Support for IOS SSL VPN

The DTLS Support for IOS SSL VPN feature enables DTLS as a transport protocol for the traffic tunneled through SSL VPN.

An AnyConnect client with a Transport Layer Security (TLS) tunnel can face problems for real-time traffic and the traffic that is not sensitive to data loss, such as VoIP. This happens because of the delay introduced by the TCP channel (AnyConnect client uses TLS over TCP channel). Also, when the TCP sessions are channeled over the TLS tunnel we have TCP in TCP. Here both the TCPs try to control the flow and achieve in-sequence reliable delivery. This causes slow down of the application and also increases the network bandwidth utilization. DTLS solves this problem by hosting TLS over UDP after making the necessary changes to TLS.

The DTLS Support for IOS SSL VPN feature is enabled by default on the Cisco IOS SSL VPN. You can use the no svc dtls command in the WebVPN group policy configuration mode to disable the DTLS support on the SSL VPN.

Prerequisites for DTLS Support for IOS SSL VPN

You must use a valid K9 image to have the DTLS Support for IOS SSL VPN feature.

Restrictions for DTLS Support for IOS SSL VPN

- Cisco IOS gateway supports the DTLS Support for IOS SSL VPN feature only with an AnyConnect clients.
- The DTLS Support for IOS SSL VPN feature is supported on AnyConnect clients with version 2.x.
- The DTLS Support for IOS SSL VPN feature is not supported on SSL VPN Client (SVC) with version 1.x.
Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Full Tunnel Support

Remote Client Software from the SSL VPN Gateway

The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software package is pushed from the SSL VPN gateway to remote clients when support is needed. The remote user (PC or device) must have either the Java Runtime Environment for Windows (version 1.4 later), or the browser must support or be configured to permit Active X controls. In either scenario, the remote user must have local administrative privileges.

Address Pool

The address pool is first defined with the `ip local pool` command in global configuration mode. The standard configuration assumes that the IP addresses in the pool are reachable from a directly connected network.

Address Pools for Nondirectly Connected Networks

If you need to configure an address pool for IP addresses from a network that is not directly connected, perform the following steps:

1. Create a local loopback interface and configure it with an IP address and subnet mask from the address pool.
2. Configure the address pool with the `ip local pool` command. The range of addresses must fall under the subnet mask configured in Step 1.
3. Set up the route. If you are using the Routing Information Protocol (RIP), configure the `router rip` command and then the `network` command, as usual, to specify a list of networks for the RIP process. If you are using the Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) protocol, configure the `ip ospf network point-to-point` command in the loopback interface. As a third choice (instead of using the RIP or OSPF protocol), you can set up static routes to the network.
4. Configure the `svc address-pool` command with the name configured in Step 2.

Manual Entry to the IP Forwarding Table

If the SSL VPN software client is unable to update the IP forwarding table on the PC of the remote user, the following error message will be displayed in the router console or syslog:

`Error : SSL VPN client was unable to Modify the IP forwarding table ......`

This error can occur if the remote client does not have a default route. You can work around this error by performing the following steps:

1. Open a command prompt (DOS shell) on the remote client.
2. Enter the `route print` command.
3. If a default route is not displayed in the output, enter the `route` command followed by the `add` and `mask` keywords. Include the default gateway IP address at the end of the route statement. See the following example:

   `C:\>route ADD 0.0.0.0 MASK 0.0.0.0 10.1.1.1`

Other SSL VPN Features

The following table lists the requirements for various SSL VPN features.
### Table 3: SSL VPN Remote User System Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Remote User System Requirements</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Web Browsing</td>
<td>Users should log out on SSL VPN sessions when they are finished.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The look and feel of web browsing with SSL VPN might be different from what users are accustomed to. For example, when they are using SSL VPN, the following should be noted:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The SSL VPN title bar appears above each web page.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Websites can be accessed as follows:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Entering the URL in the Enter Web Address field on the SSL VPN home page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Clicking a preconfigured website link on the SSL VPN homepage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Clicking a link on a webpage accessed by one of the previous two methods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Also, depending on how a particular account was configured, the following might have occurred:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Some websites are blocked.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Only the websites that appear as links on the SSL VPN home page are available.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Remote User System Requirements</td>
<td>Additional Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Network Browsing and File Management | File permissions configured for shared remote access  
Server name and passwords are necessary for protected file servers  
Domain, workgroup, and server names where folders and files reside | Only shared folders and files are accessible through SSL VPN.  
A user might not be familiar with how to locate files through the network of an organization.  
**Note** You should not interrupt the Copy File to Server operation or navigate to a different window while the copying is in progress. Interrupting this operation can cause an incomplete file to be saved on the server. |
| Using e-mail:Thin Client | Same requirements as for Thin Client (see the TCP Port Forwarding and Thin Client).  
Other Mail Clients  
**Note** If you use an IMAP client and lose the e-mail server connection or you are unable to make a new connection, you should close the IMAP application and restart SSL VPN. | To use e-mail, users must start Thin Client from the SSL VPN home page. The e-mail client is then available for use.  
Microsoft Outlook Express versions 5.5 and 6.0 have been tested.  
SSL VPN should support other SMTPS, POP3S, or IMAP4S e-mail programs, such as Netscape Mail, Lotus Notes, and Eudora, but they have not been verified. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Remote User System Requirements</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Using e-mail: Web Access</td>
<td>Web-based e-mail product installed</td>
<td>Supported products are as follows:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• OWA 5.5, 2000, and 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Netscape, Mozilla, and Internet Explorer are supported with OWA 5.5 and 2000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Internet Explorer 6.0 or a later version is required with OWA 2003. Netscape and Mozilla are supported with OWA 2003.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Lotus Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Operating system support:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Note Later versions of the following browsers are also supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Microsoft Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Vista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Macintosh OS X 10.4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Linux (Redhat RHEL 3.0 +, FEDORA 5, or FEDORA 6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SSL VPN-supported browser:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The following browsers have been verified for SSL VPN. Other browsers might not fully support SSL VPN features.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Note Later versions of the following software are also supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Internet Explorer 6.0 or 7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Firefox 2.0 (Windows and Linux)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Safari 2.0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Other web-based e-mail products should also work, but they have not been verified.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Platform Support

For information about platform support for the SSL VPN feature, see the Cisco IOS SSL VPN data sheet section.

### How to Configure SSL VPN Services on a Router

#### Configuring an SSL VPN Gateway

The SSL VPN gateway acts as a proxy for connections to protected resources. Protected resources are accessed through an SSL-encrypted connection between the gateway and a web-enabled browser on a remote device, such as a personal computer. Entering the `webvpn gateway` command places the router in SSL VPN gateway configuration mode. The following configuration are accomplished in this task:

- The gateway is configured with an IP address.
- A port number is configured to carry HTTPS traffic (443 is default).
- A hostname is configured for the gateway.
- Crypto encryption and trust points are configured.
- The gateway is configured to redirect HTTP traffic (port 80) over HTTPS.
- The gateway is enabled.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Remote User System Requirements</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Using the Cisco Tunnel Connection</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>To retrieve Tunnel Connection log messages using the Windows Event Viewer, go to Program Files &gt; Administrative Tools &gt; Event Viewer in Windows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Using Secure Desktop Manager         | A Secure Desktop Manager-supported browser | On Microsoft Windows:  
- Internet Explorer version 6.0 or 7.0  
- Netscape version 7.2                        |
| On Linux:                            |                                         | • Netscape version 7.2                                                                  |
| Using Cache Cleaner or Secure Desktop | A Cisco Secure Desktop-supported browser | Any browser supported for Secure Desktop Manager.                                       |
Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

The SSL VPN provides remote-access connectivity from almost any Internet-enabled location using only a web browser and its native SSL encryption. The `ssl encryption` command is configured to restrict the encryption algorithms that SSL uses in Cisco IOS software.

There is a known compatibility issue with the encryption type and Java. If the Java port-forwarding applet does not download properly and the configuration line `ssl encryption 3des-sha1 aes-sha1` is present, you should remove the line from the WebVPN gateway subconfiguration.

The configuration of the `ssl trustpoint` command is required only if you need to configure a specific certification authority (CA) certificate. A self-signed certificate is automatically generated when an SSL VPN gateway is put in service.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `webvpn gateway name`
4. `hostname name`
5. `ip address number [port number] [standby name]`
6. `http-redirect [port number]`
7. `ssl encryption [aes-sha1] [3des-sha1] [rc4-md5]`
8. `ssl trustpoint name`
9. `in service`
10. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> <code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device&gt;</code> <code>enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> <code>webvpn gateway name</code></td>
<td>Enters WebVPN gateway configuration mode to configure an SSL VPN gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device(config)# webvpn gateway GW_1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Only one gateway is configured in an SSL VPN-enabled network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

**Step 4**
- **hostname name**
  - **Example:**
    ```
    Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# hostname VPN_1
    ```
  - (Optional) Configures the hostname for an SSL VPN gateway.

**Step 5**
- **ip address number [port number] [standby name]**
  - **Example:**
    ```
    Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# ip address 10.1.1.1
    ```
  - (Optional) Configures a proxy IP address on an SSL VPN gateway.

**Step 6**
- **http-redirect [port number]**
  - **Example:**
    ```
    Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# http-redirect
    ```
  - (Optional) Configures HTTP traffic to be carried over HTTPS.
    - When this command is enabled, the SSL VPN gateway listens on port 80 and redirects HTTP traffic over port 443 or the port number specified with the `port` keyword.

**Step 7**
- **ssl encryption [aes-sha1] [3des-sha1] [rc4-md5]**
  - **Example:**
    ```
    Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# ssl encryption aes-sha-1
    ```
  - (Optional) Specifies the encryption algorithm that the SSL protocol uses for SSL VPN connections.
    - The ordering of the algorithms specifies the preference.

**Step 8**
- **ssl trustpoint name**
  - **Example:**
    ```
    Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# ssl trustpoint CA_CERT
    ```
  - (Optional if a self-signed certificate is to be used.) Configures the certificate trust point on an SSL VPN gateway.

**Step 9**
- **inservice**
  - **Example:**
    ```
    Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# inservice
    ```
  - (Optional) Enables an SSL VPN gateway.
    - A gateway cannot be enabled or put “in service” until a proxy IP address has been configured.

**Step 10**
- **end**
  - **Example:**
    ```
    Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# end
    ```
  - Exists the WebVPN gateway configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.

### What to Do Next

SSL VPN context and policy group configurations must be configured before an SSL VPN gateway can be operationally deployed. Proceed to the “Configuring an SSL VPN Context” section to see information on SSL VPN context configuration.

### Configuring a Generic SSL VPN Gateway

To configure a generic SSL VPN gateway, perform the following steps in privileged EXEC mode.
The advantage of this configuration over the one in the configuration task in the Configuring an SSL VPN Gateway section is that basic commands and context can be configured quickly using just the `webvpn enable` command.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `webvpn enable gateway-addr ip-address`
3. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> <code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> <code>webvpn enable gateway-addr ip-address</code></td>
<td>Configures a generic SSL VPN gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# webvpn enable gateway-addr 10.1.1.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> <code>end</code></td>
<td>Exists the webvpn gateway configuration mode and enters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring an SSL VPN Context**

The SSL VPN context defines the virtual configuration of the SSL VPN. Entering the `webvpn context` command places the router in SSL VPN configuration mode. The following configurations are accomplished in this task:

- A gateway and domain is associated.
- The AAA authentication method is specified.
- A group policy is associated.
- The remote user portal (web page) is customized.
- A limit on the number users sessions is configured.
- The context is enabled.
The `ssl authenticate verify all` command is enabled by default when a context configuration is created. The context cannot be removed from the router configuration while an SSL VPN gateway is in an enabled state (in service).

A virtual hostname is specified when multiple virtual hosts are mapped to the same IP address on the SSL VPN gateway (similar to the operation of a canonical domain name). The virtual hostname differentiates host requests on the gateway. The host header in the HTTP message is modified to direct traffic to the virtual host. The virtual hostname is configured with the `gateway` command in WebVPN context configuration mode.

**Before you begin**

The SSL VPN gateway configuration has been completed.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal  
3. webvpn context name  
4. aaa authentication {domain name | list name}  
5. policy group name  
6. exit  
7. default-group-policy name  
8. exit  
9. gateway name [domain name | virtual-host name]  
10. inservice  
11. login-message [message-string]  
12. logo [file filename | none]  
13. max-users number  
14. secondary-color color  
15. secondary-text-color {black | white}  
16. title [title-string]  
17. title-color color  
18. svc platform {lin | mac | win} seq sequence-number  
19. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>webvpn context name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# webvpn context context1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tip</td>
<td>The context can be optionally named using the domain or virtual hostname. This is recommended as a best practice. It simplifies the management of multiple context configurations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>`aaa authentication {domain name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-webvpn-context)# aaa authentication domain SERVER_GROUP</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tip</td>
<td>If this command is not configured, the SSL VPN gateway will use global AAA parameters (if configured) for remote-user authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td><code>policy group name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-webvpn-group)# exit</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td><code>default-group-policy name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-webvpn-context)# default-group-policy ONE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-webvpn-context)# exit</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 9</td>
<td>`gateway name [domain name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-webvpn-context)# gateway GW_1 domain cisco.com</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 10</td>
<td><code>in-service</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# inservice</td>
<td>• The context is put “in service” by entering this command. However, the context is not operational until it is associated with an enabled SSL VPN gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong></td>
<td>login-message <code>[message-string]</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Configures a message for the user login text box displayed on the login page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# login-message “Please enter your login credentials”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 12</strong></td>
<td>logo `[file</td>
<td>filename</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# logo file flash:/mylogo.gif</td>
<td>• The source image file for the logo is a gif, jpg, or png file that is up to 255 characters in length (filename) and up to 100 KB in size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 13</strong></td>
<td>max-users <code>number</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Limits the number of connections to an SSL VPN that will be permitted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# max-users 500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 14</strong></td>
<td>secondary-color <code>color</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Configures the color of the secondary title bars on the login and portal pages of an SSL VPN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# secondary-color darkseagreen</td>
<td>• The value for the <code>color</code> argument is entered as a comma-separated red, green, blue (RGB) value, an HTML color value (beginning with a pound sign [#]), or the name of the color that is recognized in HTML (no spaces between words or characters). The value is limited to 32 characters. The value is parsed to ensure that it matches one of the following formats (using Perl regex notation):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• &quot;&gt;#x{6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• \d{1,3},\d{1,3},\d{1,3} (and each number is from 1 to 255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• \w+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The default color is purple.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 15   | secondary-text-color \{black \| white\} | (Optional) Configures the color of the text on the secondary bars of an SSL VPN.  
- The color of the text on the secondary bars must be aligned with the color of the text on the title bar.  
- The default color is black. |
|      | Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# secondary-text-color white |
| 16   | title [title-string] | (Optional) Configures the HTML title string that is shown in the browser title and on the title bar of an SSL VPN.  
- The optional form of the title command is entered to configure a custom text string. If this command is issued without entering a text string, a title will not be displayed in the browser window. If the no form of this command is used, the default title string “WebVPN Service” is displayed. |
|      | Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# title “Secure Access: Unauthorized users prohibited” |
| 17   | title-color color | (Optional) Specifies the color of the title bars on the login and portal pages of an SSL VPN.  
- The value for the color argument is entered as a comma-separated red, green, blue (RGB) value, an HTML color value (beginning with a pound sign [#]), or the name of the color that is recognized in HTML (no spaces between words or characters). The value is limited to 32 characters. The value is parsed to ensure that it matches one of the following formats (using Perl regex notation):  
  - \#/x{6}  
  - \d{1,3},\d{1,3},\d{1,3} (and each number is from 1 to 255)  
  - \w+  
- The default color is purple. |
|      | Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# title-color darkseagreen |
| 18   | svc platform \{lin \| mac \| win\} seq sequence-number | (Optional) Configures the platform of an AnyConnect version per context.  
- If the svc platform command is not used, AnyConnect is configured in standalone mode.  
- The seq keyword assigns a priority number to an AnyConnect client in the same platform. The range of sequence-number argument is from 1 to 10. |
|      | Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# svc platform lin seq 1 |
| 19   | end | Exists the WebVPN context configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode. |
|      | Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# end |
What to Do Next

An SSL VPN policy group configuration must be defined before an SSL VPN gateway can be operationally deployed. Proceed to the Configuring an SSL VPN Policy Group section to see information on SSL VPN policy group configuration.

Configuring an SSL VPN Policy Group

The policy group is a container that defines the presentation of the portal and the permissions for resources that are configured for a group of remote users. Entering the `policy group` command places the router in WebVPN group policy configuration mode. After it is configured, the group policy is attached to the SSL VPN context configuration by configuring the `default-group-policy` command. The following tasks are accomplished in this configuration:

- The presentation of the SSL VPN portal page is configured.
- A NetBIOS server list is referenced.
- A port-forwarding list is referenced.
- The idle and session timers are configured.
- A URL list is referenced.

Outlook Web Access (OWA) 2003 is supported by the SSL VPN gateway upon completion of this task. The Outlook Exchange Server must be reachable by the SSL VPN gateway via TCP/IP.

A URL list can be configured under the SSL VPN context configuration and then separately for each individual policy group configuration. Individual URL list configurations must have unique names.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `webvpn context name`
4. `policy group name`
5. `banner string`
6. `hide-url-bar`
7. `nbns-list name`
9. `timeout {idle seconds | session seconds}`
10. `url-list name`
11. `end`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## SSL VPN Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS Release 15M&T

### Configuring an SSL VPN Policy Group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>webvpn context name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policy group name</td>
<td>(Optional) Configures a banner to be displayed after a successful login.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banner string</td>
<td>(Optional) Prevents the URL bar from being displayed on the SSL VPN portal page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# banner &quot;Login Successful&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide-url-bar</td>
<td>(Optional) Attaches a NetBIOS Name Service (NBNS) server list to a policy group configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# hide-url-bar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nbns-list name</td>
<td>(Optional) Attaches a NetBIOS Name Service (NBNS) server list to a policy group configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# nbns-list SERVER_LIST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port-forward name [auto-download[http-proxy [proxy-url homepage-url]]]</td>
<td>(Optional) Attaches a port-forwarding list to a policy group configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# port-forward EMAIL auto-download http-proxy proxy-url &quot;<a href="http://www.example.com">http://www.example.com</a>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **auto-download** — (Optional) Allows for automatic download of the port-forwarding Java applet on the portal page of a website.
- **http-proxy** — (Optional) Allows the Java applet to act as a proxy for the browser of the user.
- **proxy-url** — (Optional) Page at this URL address opens as the portal (home) page of the user.
- **homepage-url** — URL of the home page.
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> timeout {idle <code>seconds</code> | session <code>seconds</code>}</td>
<td>(Optional) Configures the length of time that a remote user session can remain idle or the total length of time that the session can remain connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-webvpn-group)# timeout idle 1800</td>
<td>- Upon expiration of either timer, the remote user connection is closed. The remote user must log in (reauthenticate) to access the SSL VPN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> url-list <code>name</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Attaches a URL list to policy group configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-webvpn-group)# url-list ACCESS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong> end</td>
<td>Exists the WebVPN group configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-webvpn-group)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### What to Do Next

At the completion of this task, the SSL VPN gateway and context configurations are operational and enabled (in service), and the policy group has been defined. The SSL VPN gateway is operational for clientless remote access (HTTPS only). Proceed to the Configuring Local AAA Authentication for SSL VPN User Sessions section to see information about configuring AAA for remote-user connections.

### Configuring Local AAA Authentication for SSL VPN User Sessions

The steps in this task show how to configure a local AAA database for remote-user authentication. AAA is configured in global configuration mode. In this task, the `aaa authentication` command is not configured under the SSL VPN context configuration. Omitting this command from the SSL VPN context configuration causes the SSL VPN gateway to use global authentication parameters by default.

**Before you begin**

SSL VPN gateway and context configurations are enabled and operational.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa new-model
4. username `name` secret \{0 user-secret \| 5 secret-string \| user-secret\}
5. aaa authentication login default local
6. end
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  Example:  
  Device> enable |  
  • Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
  Example:  
  Device# configure terminal |
| **Step 3** aaa new-model | Enables the AAA access control model.  
  Example:  
  Device(config)# aaa new-model |
| **Step 4** username name secret {0 user-secret | 5 secret-string | user-secret} | Establishes a username-based authentication system.  
  Example:  
  Device(config)# username USER1 secret 0 PsW2143 |  
  • Entering 0 configures the password as clear text.  
  Entering 5 encrypts the password. |
| **Step 5** aaa authentication login default local | Configures local AAA authentication.  
  Example:  
  Device(config)# aaa authentication login default local |
| **Step 6** end | Exists the WebVPN group configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.  
  Example:  
  Device(config-webvpn-group)# end |

### What to Do Next

The database that is configured for remote-user authentication on the SSL VPN gateway can be a local database, as shown in this task, or the database can be accessed through any RADIUS or TACACS+ AAA server.

It is recommended that you use a separate AAA server, such as a Cisco ACS. A separate AAA server provides a more robust security solution. It allows you to configure unique passwords for each remote user and accounting and logging for remote-user sessions. Proceed to the Configuring AAA for SSL VPN Users Using a Secure Access Control Server section to see more information.

### Configuring AAA for SSL VPN Users Using a Secure Access Control Server

The steps in this task show how to configure AAA using a separate RADIUS or TACACS+ server. AAA is configured in global configuration mode. The authentication list or method is referenced in the SSL VPN...
context configuration with the `aaa authentication` command. The steps in this task configure AAA using a RADIUS server.

**Before you begin**

- SSL VPN gateway and context configurations are enabled and operational.
- A RADIUS or TACACS+ AAA server is operational and reachable from the SSL VPN gateway.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `aaa new-model`
4. `aaa group server {radius group-name | tacacs+ group-name}`
5. `server ip-address [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number]`
6. `exit`
7. `aaa authentication login {default | list-name} method1 [method2...]
8. `radius-server host {hostname | ip-address} [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number] [timeout seconds] [retransmit retries] [key string] [alias {hostname | ip-address}]`
9. `webvpn context name`
10. `aaa authentication {domain name | list name}`
11. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables the AAA access control model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> aaa group server {radius group-name</td>
<td>tacacs+ group-name}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# aaa group server radius myServer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server</td>
<td>ip-address [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-sg-radius)# server 10.1.1.20 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Exits server-group configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-sg-radius)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa authentication login {default</td>
<td>list-name} method1 [method2...]</td>
<td>Sets AAA login parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authentication login default local group myServer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 8</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>radius-server host {hostname</td>
<td>ip-address} [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number] [timeout seconds] [retransmit retries] [key string] [alias {hostname</td>
<td>ip-address}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# radius-server host 10.1.1.20 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 9</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>webvpn context name</td>
<td>Enters SSL VPN configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 10</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa authentication {domain name</td>
<td>list name}</td>
<td>Configures AAA authentication for SSL VPN sessions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# aaa authentication domain myServer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 11</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
<td>Exists the SSL VPN configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What to Do Next**

Proceed to the section Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN section to see RADIUS attribute-value pair information introduced to support this feature.
Configuring PKI Integration with a AAA Server

Perform this task to generate a AAA username from the certificate presented by the peer and specify which fields within a certificate should be used to build the AAA database username.

The following restrictions should be considered when using the **all** keyword as the subject name for the **authorization username** command:

- Some AAA servers limit the length of the username (for example, to 64 characters). As a result, the entire certificate subject name cannot be longer than the limitation of the server.

- Some AAA servers limit the available character set that may be used for the username (for example, a space [ ] and an equal sign [=] may not be acceptable). You cannot use the **all** keyword for a AAA server having such a character-set limitation.

- The **subject-name** command in the trustpoint configuration may not always be the final AAA subject name. If the fully qualified domain name (FQDN), serial number, or IP address of the router are included in a certificate request, the subject name field of the issued certificate will also have these components. To turn off the components, use the **fqdn**, **serial-number**, and **ip-address** commands with the **none** keyword.

- CA servers sometimes change the requested subject name field when they issue a certificate. For example, CA servers of some vendors switch the relative distinguished names (RDNs) in the requested subject names to the following order: CN, OU, O, L, ST, and C. However, another CA server might append the configured LDAP directory root (for example, O=cisco.com) to the end of the requested subject name.

- Depending on the tools you choose for displaying a certificate, the printed order of the RDNs in the subject name could be different. Cisco IOS software always displays the least significant RDN first, but other software, such as Open Source Secure Socket Layer (OpenSSL), does the opposite. Therefore, if you are configuring a AAA server with a full distinguished name (DN) (subject name) as the corresponding username, ensure that the Cisco IOS software style (that is, with the least significant RDN first) is used.

```bash
or
radius-server host  hostname [key string]
```

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa new-model
4. aaa authorization network listname [method]
5. crypto pki trustpoint name
6. enrollment [mode] [retry period minutes] [retry count number] url url [pem]
7. revocation-check method
8. exit
9. authorization username subjectname subjectname
10. authorization list listname
11. tacacs-server host hostname [key string]
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables the AAA access control model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aaa authorization network listname [method]</td>
<td>Sets the parameters that restrict user access to a network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• method --Can be group radius, group tacacs+, or group group-name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router (config)# aaa authorization network maxaaa group tacacs+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>crypto pki trustpoint name</td>
<td>Declares the trustpoint and a given name and enters ca-trustpoint configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router (config)# crypto pki trustpoint msca</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enrollment [mode] [retry period minutes] [retry count number] url url [pem]</td>
<td>Specifies the following enrollment parameters of the CA:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• (Optional) The mode keyword specifies the registration authority (RA) mode, if your CA system provides an RA. By default, RA mode is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router (ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url <a href="http://caserver.myexample.com">http://caserver.myexample.com</a></td>
<td>- or-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- or-</td>
<td>• (Optional) The retry period keyword and minutes argument specifies the period, in minutes, in which the router waits before sending the CA another certificate request. Valid values are from 1 to 60. The default is 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Router (ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://[2001:DB8:1::1]:80</td>
<td>• (Optional) The retry count keyword and number argument specifies the number of times a router will resend a certificate request when it does not receive a response from the previous request. Valid values are from 1 to 100. The default is 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The url argument is the URL of the CA to which your router should send certificate requests.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

**Purpose**

**Note** With the introduction of Cisco IOS Release 15.2(1)T, an IPv6 address can be added to the `http:` enrolment method. For example: `http://[ipv6-address]:80`. The IPv6 address must be enclosed in brackets in the URL. See the Command Reference document for more information on the other enrollment methods that can be used.

- (Optional) The `pem` keyword adds privacy-enhanced mail (PEM) boundaries to the certificate request.

#### Step 7

**revocation-check method**

**Example:**

```
Router (ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check crl
```

(Optional) Checks the revocation status of a certificate.

#### Step 8

**exit**

**Example:**

```
Router (ca-trustpoint)# exit
```

Exits ca-trustpoint configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.

#### Step 9

**authorization username subjectname subjectname**

**Example:**

```
Router (config)# authorization username subjectname serialnumber
```

Sets parameters for the different certificate fields that are used to build the AAA username.

The `subjectname` argument can be any of the following:

- `all` -- Entire distinguished name (subject name) of the certificate.
- `commonname` -- Certification common name.
- `country` -- Certificate country.
- `email` -- Certificate e-mail.
- `ipaddress` -- Certificate IP address.
- `locality` -- Certificate locality.
- `organization` -- Certificate organization.
- `organizationalunit` -- Certificate organizational unit.
- `postalcode` -- Certificate postal code.
- `serialnumber` -- Certificate serial number.
- `state` -- Certificate state field.
- `streetaddress` -- Certificate street address.
- `title` -- Certificate title.
- `unstructuredname` -- Certificate unstructured name.
### Configuring RADIUS Accounting for SSL VPN User Sessions

#### Before you begin

Before configuring RADIUS accounting for SSL VPN user sessions, you should first have configured AAA-related commands (in global configuration mode) and have set the accounting list.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `aaa new-model`
4. `webvpn context context-name`
5. `aaa accounting list aaa-list`
6. `end`

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

| **Step 10**                         | Specifies the AAA authorization list.            |
| **Step 11**                         | Specifies a TACACS+ host. or                     |
|                                    | Specifies a RADIUS host.                        |

#### Example

**Step 10**

```plaintext
authorization list listname
```  
**Example:**

```plaintext
Route (config)# authorization list maxaaa
```  

**Step 11**

```plaintext
tacacs-server host hostname [key string]
```  
**Example:**

```plaintext
Router(config)# tacacs-server host 192.0.2.2 key a_secret_key
```  
**Example:**

```plaintext
radius-server host hostname [key string]
```  
**Example:**

```plaintext
Router(config)# radius-server host 192.0.2.1 key another_secret_key
```
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 3**

- **aaa new-model**
  
  **Example:**
  
  Device(config)# aaa new-model

- **webvpn context context-name**
  
  **Example:**
  
  Device(config)# webvpn context context1

**Step 5**

- **aaa accounting list aaa-list**
  
  **Example:**
  
  Device(config-webvpn-context)# aaa accounting list list1

**Step 6**

- **end**
  
  **Example:**
  
  Device(config-webvpn-context)# end

---

### Monitoring and Maintaining RADIUS Accounting for an SSL VPN Session

To monitor and maintain your RADIUS accounting configuration, perform the following steps (the `debug` commands can be used together or individually).

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **enable**
2. **debug webvpn aaa**
3. **debug aaa accounting**
4. **end**

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
  
  - **enable**
  
  **Example:**
  
  Device> enable |

  Enables privileged EXEC mode.

  - Enter your password if prompted.

| **Step 2**
  
  - **debug webvpn aaa**
  
  **Example:** |

  Enables SSL VPN session monitoring for AAA.
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# debug webvpn aaa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Step 3

**debug aaa accounting**

*Example:*

Device# debug aaa accounting

Displays information on accountable events as they occur.

#### Step 4

**end**

*Example:*

Device# end

Enters the privileged EXEC mode.

---

### Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN

This section lists RADIUS attribute-value (AV) pair information introduced to support SSL VPN. For information on using RADIUS AV pairs with Cisco IOS software, see the "Configuring RADIUS" chapter in the *RADIUS Configuration Guide*.

The following table shows information about SSL VPN RADIUS attribute-value pairs. All SSL VPN attributes (except for the standard IETF RADIUS attributes) start with `webvpn:` as follows:

`webvpn:urllist-name=cisco webvpn:nbnslist-name=cifs webvpn:default-domain=cisco.com`

#### Table 4: SSL VPN RADIUS Attribute-Value Pairs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Type of Value</th>
<th>Values</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>addr (Framed-IP-Address(^1))</td>
<td>ipaddr</td>
<td><code>IP_address</code></td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addr-pool</td>
<td>string</td>
<td><code>name</code></td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto-applet-download</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>0 (disable) 1 (enable)(^2)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banner</td>
<td>string</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>citrix-enabled</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>0 (disable) 1 (enable)(^2)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default-domain</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dns-servers</td>
<td>ipaddr</td>
<td><code>IP_address</code></td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dpd-client-timeout</td>
<td>integer (seconds)</td>
<td>0 (disabled)-3600</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dpd-gateway-timeout</td>
<td>integer (seconds)</td>
<td>0 (disabled)-3600</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>file-access</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>0 (disable) 1 (enable). See the Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN, on page 55 section.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Type of Value</td>
<td>Values</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>file-browse</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>0 (disable) 1 (enable). See the Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN, on page 55 section.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>file-entry</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>0 (disable) 1 (enable). See the Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN, on page 55 section.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide-urlbar</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>0 (disable) 1 (enable). See the Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN, on page 55 section.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home-page</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idle-time (Idle-Timeout). See the Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN, on page 55 section.</td>
<td>integer (seconds)</td>
<td>0-3600</td>
<td>2100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ie-proxy-exception</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>DNS_name</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ipaddr</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ie-proxy-server</td>
<td>ipaddr</td>
<td>IP_address</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inacl</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>1-199, 1300-2699</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>string</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep-svc-installed</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>0 (disable) 1 (enable). See the Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN, on page 55 section.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nbnslist-name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>netmask (Framed-IP-Netmask) Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN, on page 55 section.</td>
<td>ipaddr</td>
<td>IP_address_mask</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Type of Value</td>
<td>Values</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port-forward-auto</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>0 (disable) 1 (enable)</td>
<td>If this AV pair is not configured, the default is whatever was configured for the group policy. If this AV pair is configured with an integer of 1, the 1 will override a group policy value of 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port-forward-http-proxy</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>0 (disable) 1 (enable)</td>
<td>HTTP proxy is not enabled. If this AV pair is configured with an integer of 1, the 1 will override a group policy value of 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port-forward-http-proxy-url</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>URL address (for example, <a href="http://example.com">http://example.com</a>)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port-forward-name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primary-dns</td>
<td>ipaddr</td>
<td>IP_address</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rekey-interval</td>
<td>integer (seconds)</td>
<td>0-43200</td>
<td>21600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary-dns</td>
<td>ipaddr</td>
<td>IP_address</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>split-dns</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>split-exclude</td>
<td>ipaddr ipaddr</td>
<td>IP_address IP_address_mask</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>split-inlude</td>
<td>ipaddr ipaddr</td>
<td>IP_address IP_address_mask</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sso-server-name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>svc-enabled</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>0 (disable) 1 (enable)</td>
<td>See the Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN, on page 55 section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>svc-ie-proxy-policy</td>
<td>word</td>
<td>none, auto, bypass-local</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attribute Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Type of Value</th>
<th>Values</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>svc-required</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>0 (disable) 1 (enable). See the Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN, on page 55 section.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout (Session-Timeout)</td>
<td>integer (seconds)</td>
<td>1-1209600</td>
<td>43200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urllist-name</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user-vpn-group</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wins-server-primary</td>
<td>ipaddr</td>
<td>IP_address</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wins-servers</td>
<td>ipaddr</td>
<td>IP_address</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wins-server-secondary</td>
<td>ipaddr</td>
<td>IP_address</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Any integer other than 0 enables this feature.
3. Any integer other than 0 enables this feature.
4. You can specify either split-include or split-exclude, but you cannot specify both options.
5. You can specify either svc-enable or svc-required, but you cannot specify both options.

### What to Do Next

See the Configuring a URL List for Clientless Remote Access section for information about customizing the URL list configured in Step 10 of the Configuring an SSL VPN Policy Group section.

### Configuring a URL List for Clientless Remote Access

The steps in this configuration task show how to configure a URL list. The URL list, as the name implies, is a list of HTTP URLs that are displayed on the portal page after a successful login. The URL list is configured in WebVPN context configuration and WebVPN group policy configuration modes.

#### Before you begin

SSL VPN gateway and context configurations are enabled and operational.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn context name
4. url-list name
5. heading text-string
6. url-text name url-value url
7. exit
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | enable           | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
|      | Example:         |         |
|      | Device> enable   |         |
| 2    | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
|      | Example:         |         |
|      | Device# configure terminal | |
| 3    | webvpn context name | Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.  
|      | Example:         |         |
|      | Device(config)# webvpn context context1 | |
| 4    | url-list name | Enters WebVPN URL list configuration mode to configure the list of URLs to which a user has access on the portal page of an SSL VPN.  
|      | Example:         |         |
|      | Device(config-webvpn-context)# url-list ACCESS | |
| 5    | heading text-string | Configures the heading that is displayed above URLs listed on the portal page of an SSL VPN.  
|      | Example:         |         |
|      | Device(config-webvpn-url)# heading "Quick Links" | |
| 6    | url-text name url-value url | Adds an entry to a URL list.  
|      | Example:         |         |
|      | Device(config-webvpn-url)# url-text "Human Resources" url-value example.com | |
| 7    | exit             | Exits WebVPN URL list configuration mode, and enters SSL VPN context configuration mode.  
|      | Example:         |         |
|      | Device(config-webvpn-url)# exit | |
| 8    | policy group name | Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.  
<p>|      | Example:         |         |
|      | Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> url-list name</td>
<td>Attaches the URL list to the policy group configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# url-list ACCESS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> end</td>
<td>Exists the WebVPN group policy configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### What to Do Next

See the Configuring Microsoft File Shares for Clientless Remote Access section for information about configuring clientless remote access to file shares.

### Configuring Microsoft File Shares for Clientless Remote Access

In clientless remote access mode, files and directories created on Microsoft Windows servers can be accessed by the remote client through the HTTPS-enabled browser. When clientless remote access is enabled, a list of file server and directory links is displayed on the portal page after login. The administrator can customize permissions on the SSL VPN gateway to provide limited read-only access for a single file or full-write access and network browsing capabilities. The following access capabilities can be configured:

- Network browse (listing of domains)
- Domain browse (listing of servers)
- Server browse (listing of shares)
- Listing files in a share
- Downloading files
- Modifying files
- Creating new directories
- Creating new files
- Deleting files

**Common Internet File System Support**—CIFS is the protocol that provides access to Microsoft file shares and support for common operations that allow shared files to be accessed or modified.

**NetBIOS Name Service Resolution**—Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) uses NetBIOS name resolution to map and establish connections between Microsoft servers. A single server must be identified by its IP address in this configuration. Up to three servers can be added to the configuration. If multiple servers are added, one server should be configured as the master browser.

**Samba Support**—Microsoft file shares can be accessed through the browser on a Linux system that is configured to run Samba.
### Before you begin
- SSL VPN gateway and context configurations are enabled and operational.
- A Microsoft file server is operational and reachable from the SSL VPN gateway over TCP/IP.

**Note**
File shares configured on Windows 2008 is not supported. Only file shares configured on Microsoft Windows 2000, Windows 2003, Windows XP, and Red Hat Linux servers are supported.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `webvpn context name`
4. `nbns-list name`
5. `nbns-server ip-address [master] [timeout seconds] [retries number]`
6. `exit`
7. `policy group name`
8. `nbns-list name`
9. `functions {file-access | file-browse | file-entry | svc-enabled | svc-required}`
10. `end`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> webvpn context name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> nbns-list name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN NBNS list configuration mode to configure an NBNS server list for CIFS name resolution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-webvpn-context)# nbns-list SERVER_LIST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> nbns-server ip-address [master] [timeout seconds] [retries number]</td>
<td>Adds a server to an NBNS server list and enters WebVPN NBNS list configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-nbnslist)# nbns-server 172.16.1.1 master</td>
<td>• The server specified with the <code>ip-address</code> argument can be a primary domain controller (PDC) in a Microsoft network. • When multiple NBNS servers are specified, a single server is configured as master browser. • Up to three NBNS server statements can be configured.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 6**

exit

`Example:`

Device(config-webvpn-nbnslist)# exit

Exits WebVPN NBNS list configuration mode and enters WebVPN context configuration mode.

**Step 7**

`policy group name`

`Example:`

Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE

Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.

**Step 8**

`nbns-list name`

`Example:`

Device(config-webvpn-group)# nbns-list SERVER_LIST

Attaches an NBNS server list to a policy group configuration.

**Step 9**

`functions {file-access | file-browse | file-entry | svc-enabled | svc-required}`

`Example:`

Device(config-webvpn-group)# functions file-access

Configures access for Microsoft file shares.

• Entering the `file-access` keyword enables network file share access. File servers in the server list are listed on the SSL VPN portal page when this keyword is enabled.

• Entering the `file-browse` keyword enables browse permissions for server and file shares. The file-access function must be enabled in order to also use this function.

• Entering the `file-entry` keyword enables “modify” permissions for files in the shares listed on the SSL VPN portal page.

**Step 10**

`end`

`Example:`

Device(config-webvpn-group)# end

Exists the WebVPN group policy configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.

### What to Do Next

See the Configuring Citrix Application Support for Clientless Remote Access section for information about configuring clientless remote access for Citrix-enabled applications.
Configuring Citrix Application Support for Clientless Remote Access

Clientless Citrix support allows the remote user to run Citrix-enabled applications through the SSL VPN as if the application were locally installed (similar to traditional thin-client computing). Citrix applications run on a MetaFrame XP server (or server farm). The SSL VPN gateway provides access to the remote user. The applications run in real time over the SSL VPN. This task shows how to enable Citrix support for policy group remote users.

The Independent Computing Architecture (ICA) client carries keystrokes and mouse clicks from the remote user to the MetaFrame XP server. ICA traffic is carried over TCP port number 1494. This port is opened when a Citrix application is accessed. If multiple application are accessed, the traffic is carried over a single TCP session.

Before you begin

- A Citrix MetaFrame XP server is operational and reachable from the SSL VPN gateway over TCP/IP.
- SSL VPN gateway and context configurations are enabled and operational.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. access-list access-list-number {permit | deny} protocol source destination
4. webvpn context name
5. policy group name
6. citrix enabled
7. filter citrix extended-acl
8. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>access-list access-list-number {permit</td>
<td>deny} protocol source destination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# access-list 100 permit ip 192.168.1.0 0.255.255.255</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>webvpn context name</code></td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>&lt;name&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config)# webvpn context context1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>policy group name</code></td>
<td>Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>&lt;name&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>citrix enabled</code></td>
<td>Enables Citrix application support for remote users in a policy group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-webvpn-group)# citrix enabled</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>filter citrix extended-acl</code></td>
<td>Configures a Citrix Thin Client filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td><code>&lt;extended-acl&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-webvpn-group)# filter citrix 100</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 8</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Device(config-webvpn-group)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### What to Do Next

Support for standard applications that use well-known port numbers, such as e-mail and Telnet, can be configured using the port forwarding feature. See the Configuring Application Port Forwarding section for more information.

### Configuring Application Port Forwarding

Application port forwarding is configured for thin-client mode SSL VPN. Port forwarding extends the cryptographic functions of the SSL-protected browser to provide remote access to TCP and UDP-based applications that use well-known port numbers, such as POP3, SMTP, IMAP, Telnet, and SSH.

When port forwarding is enabled, the hosts file on the SSL VPN client is modified to map the application to the port number configured in the forwarding list. The application port mapping is restored to default when the user terminates the SSL VPN session.

When you are enabling port forwarding, the SSL VPN gateway will modify the hosts file on the PC of the remote user. Some software configurations and software security applications will detect this modification and prompt the remote user to choose “Yes” to permit. To permit the modification, the remote user must have local administrative privileges.
There is a known compatibility issue with the encryption type and Java. If the Java port-forwarding applet does not download properly and the configuration line `ssl encryption 3des-sha1 aes-sha1` is present, you should remove the line from the WebVPN gateway subconfiguration.

**Before you begin**

SSL VPN gateway and SSL VPN context configurations are enabled and operational.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn context name
4. port-forward name
5. local-port number remote-server name remote-port number description text-string
6. exit
7. policy group name
8. port-forward name
9. exit
10. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> webvpn context name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> port-forward name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN port-forward list configuration mode to configure a port forwarding list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# port-forward EMAIL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> local-port number remote-server name remote-port number description text-string</td>
<td>Remaps (forwards) an application port number in a port forwarding list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-port-fwd)# local-port 30016
remote-server example.com remote-port 110
description POP3

**Purpose:**

- The remote port number is the well-known port to which the application listens. The local port number is the entry configured in the port forwarding list. A local port number can be configured only once in a given port forwarding list.

### Step 6

**exit**

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-port-fwd)# exit

**Exits WebVPN port-forward list configuration mode, and enters WebVPN context configuration mode.**

### Step 7

**policy group name**

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE

**Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.**

### Step 8

**port-forward name**

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-group)# port-forward EMAIL

**Attaches a port forwarding list to a policy group configuration.**

### Step 9

**exit**

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-context)# exit

**Exits WebVPN port-forward list configuration mode, and enters WebVPN context configuration mode.**

### Step 10

**end**

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-group)# end

**Exists the WebVPN context configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.**

---

### Configuring the SSL VPN Gateway to Distribute CSD and Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Package Files

The SSL VPN gateway is preconfigured to distribute Cisco Secure Desktop (CSD) or Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software package files to remote users. The files are distributed only when CSD or Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client support is needed. The administrator performs the following tasks to prepare the gateway:

- The current software package is downloaded from www.cisco.com.
- The package file is copied to a local file system.
- The package file is installed for distribution by configuring the `crypto vpn` command.

The remote user must have administrative privileges, and the JRE for Windows version 1.4 or later must be installed before the CSD client package can be installed.
For Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software installation, the remote user must have either the Java Runtime Environment for Windows (version 1.4 or later), or the browser must support or be configured to permit Active X controls.

CSD and Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software packages should be installed for distribution on the SSL VPN gateway. Download the latest version that supports your device and the image you are using (consult a compatibility matrix for your particular setup).

The CSD software package can be downloaded at the following URL:
- [http://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/tablebuild.pl/securedesktop](http://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/tablebuild.pl/securedesktop)

The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software package can be downloaded at the following URL:
- [http://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/tablebuild.pl/anyconnect](http://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/tablebuild.pl/anyconnect)

The Cisco SSL VPN Client software package can be downloaded at the following URL:
- [http://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/tablebuild.pl/sslvpnclient](http://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/tablebuild.pl/sslvpnclient)

You will be prompted to enter your login name and password to download these files from cisco.com.

**Before you begin**

- SSL VPN gateway and context configurations are enabled and operational.
- Software installation packages are copied to a local files system, such as flash memory.

---

**Note**

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(20)T, multiple packages can be downloaded to a gateway.

---

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **crypto vpn {anyconnect file name sequence sequence-number}**
4. **end**

---

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> crypto vpn {anyconnect file name sequence sequence-number}</td>
<td>Installs a CSD or Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client package file to an SSL VPN gateway for distribution to remote users.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# crypto vpn anyconnect filea sequence 5
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| • The CSD and Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software packages are pushed to remote users as access is needed.  
• The `sequence` keyword and `sequence-number` argument are used to install multiple packages to a gateway. |

#### Step 4

**end**

**Example:**

```
Device(config)# end
```

- Exists the global configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.

---

## What to Do Next

Support for CSD and Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client can be enabled for remote users after the gateway has been prepared to distribute CSD or Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software.

### Configuring Cisco Secure Desktop Support

CSD provides a session-based interface where sensitive data can be shared for the duration of an SSL VPN session. All session information is encrypted. All traces of the session data are removed from the remote client when the session is terminated, even if the connection is terminated abruptly. CSD support for remote clients is enabled in this task.

The remote user (PC or device) must have administrative privileges, and the JRE for Windows version 1.4 or later must be installed before the CSD client packages can be installed.

#### Note

Compressed Zip file installation is supported.

#### Before you begin

- SSL VPN gateway and context configurations are enabled and operational.  
- The CSD software package is installed for distribution on the SSL VPN gateway.

See the Configuring the SSL VPN Gateway to Distribute CSD and Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Package Files section if you have not already prepared the SSL VPN gateway to distribute CSD software.

#### Note

Only Microsoft Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Apple-Mac, and Linux are supported on the remote client.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. `configure terminal`
3. `crypto vpn`
4. `csd enable`
5. `end`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>crypto vpn</code></td>
<td>Installs the CSD on an SSL VPN gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# crypto vpn csd bgl12</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>csd enable</code></td>
<td>Enables CSD support for SSL VPN sessions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# csd enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exists the global configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### What to Do Next

Upon completion of this task, the SSL VPN gateway has been configured to provide clientless and thin-client support for remote users. The SSL VPN feature also has the capability to provide full VPN access (similar to IPsec). Proceed to the Configuring Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Full Tunnel Support section to see more information.

### Configuring Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Full Tunnel Support

The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client is an application that allows a remote user to establish a full VPN connection similar to the type of connection that is established with an IPsec VPN. Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software is pushed (downloaded) and installed automatically on the PC of the remote user. The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client uses SSL to provide the security of an IPsec VPN without the complexity required to install IPsec in your network and on remote devices. The following tasks are completed in this configuration:
• An access list is applied to the tunnel to restrict VPN access.

• Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client tunnel support is enabled.

• An address pool is configured for assignment to remote clients.

• The default domain is configured.

• DNS is configured for Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client tunnel clients.

• Dead peer timers are configured for the SSL VPN gateway and remote users.

• The login home page is configured.

• The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software package is configured to remain installed on the remote client.

• Tunnel key refresh parameters are defined.

### Before you begin

• SSL VPN gateway and context configurations are enabled and operational.

• The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software package is installed for distribution on the SSL VPN gateway.

• The remote client has administrative privileges. Administrative privileges are required to download the SSL VPN software client.

See the Configuring the SSL VPN Gateway to Distribute CSD and Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Package Files section if you have not already prepared the SSL VPN gateway to distribute SSL VPN software.

**Note**

Only Microsoft Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Apple-Mac, and Linux are supported on the remote client.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **webvpn context** `name`
4. **policy group** `name`
5. **filter tunnel** `extended-acl`
6. **functions** `{file-access | file-browse | file-entry | svc-enabled | svc-required}`
7. **svc address-pool** `name` `netmask` `ip-netmask`
8. **svc default-domain** `name`
9. **svc dns-server** `{primary | secondary}` `ip-address`
10. **svc dpd-interval** `{client | gateway}` `seconds`
11. **svc keepalive** `seconds`
12. **svc homepage** `string`
13. **svc keep-client-installed**
14. **svc rekey** `{method {new-tunnel | ssl} | time seconds}`
## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> webvpn context name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> policy group name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> filter tunnel extended-acl</td>
<td>Configures an SSL VPN tunnel access filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-webvpn-group)# filter tunnel 101</td>
<td>• The tunnel access filter is used to control network and application level access. The tunnel filter is also defined in an extended access list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> functions {file-access</td>
<td>Configures Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client tunnel mode support.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>file-browse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-webvpn-group)# functions svc-enabled</td>
<td>• Entering the svc-required keyword enables only tunnel support for the remote user. If the Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software package fails to install (on the PC of the remote user), the other access modes cannot be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> svc address-pool name netmask ip-netmask</td>
<td>Configures a pool of IP addresses to assign to remote users in a policy group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>• The address pool is first defined with the ip local pool command in global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc address-pool ADDRESSES netmask 255.255.255.0</code></td>
<td>• If you are configuring an address pool for a network that is not directly connected, an address from the pool must be configured on a locally loopback interface. See the third example at the end of this section.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 8**

**svc default-domain name**

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc default-domain cisco.com

Configures the default domain for a policy group.

**Step 9**

**svc dns-server {primary | secondary} ip-address**

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc dns-server primary 192.168.3.1

Configures DNS servers for policy group remote users.

**Step 10**

**svc dpd-interval {client | gateway} seconds**

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc dpd-interval gateway 30

Configures the dead peer detection (DPD) timer value for the gateway or client.

• The DPD timer is reset every time a packet is received over the SSL VPN tunnel from the gateway or remote user.

**Step 11**

**svc keepalive seconds**

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc keepalive 300

(Optional) Enables the SVC to send keepalive messages by default with a frequency of 30 seconds.

• Use this command to adjust the frequency of keepalive messages to ensure that an SVC connection through a proxy, Cisco IOS firewall, or NAT device remains active, even if the device limits the time that the connection can be idle. Adjusting the frequency also ensures that the SVC does not disconnect and reconnect when the remote user is not actively running a socket-based application, such as Microsoft Outlook or Microsoft Internet Explorer.

• If the **svc keepalive** command is configured with a value of 0 seconds, then the keepalive function is disabled.

**Step 12**

**svc homepage string**

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc homepage www.cisco.com

Configures the URL of the web page that is displayed upon successful user login.

• The **string** argument is entered as an HTTP URL. The URL can be up to 255 characters in length.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 13</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>svc keep-client-installed</td>
<td>Configures the remote user to keep Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software installed when the SSL VPN connection is not enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc keep-client-installed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 14</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>svc rekey {method {new-tunnel</td>
<td>ssl}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc rekey method new-tunnel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 15</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exists the WebVPN group policy configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

**Tunnel Filter Configuration**

The following example, starting in global configuration mode, configures a deny access filter for any host from the 172.16.2/24 network:

```
Device(config)# access-list 101 deny ip 172.16.2.0 0.0.0.255 any
Device(config)# webvpn context context1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE
Device(config-webvpn-group)# filter tunnel 101
Device(config-webvpn-group)# end
```

**Address Pool (Directly Connected Network) Configuration**

The following example, starting in global configuration mode, configures the 192.168.1/24 network as an address pool:

```
Device(config)# ip local pool ADDRESSES 192.168.1.1 192.168.1.254
Device(config)# webvpn context context1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc address-pool ADDRESSES
Device(config-webvpn-group)# end
```

**Address Pool (Nondirectly Connected Network) Configuration**

The following example, starting in global configuration mode, configures the 172.16.1/24 network as an address pool. Because the network is not directly connected, a local loopback interface is configured.

```
Device(config)# interface loopback 0
Device(config-int)# ip address 172.16.1.126 255.255.255.0
```
Device(config)# no shutdown
Device(config)# exit
Device(config)# ip local pool ADDRESSES 172.16.1.1 172.16.1.254
Device(config)# webvpn context context1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE
Device(config-webvpn-context)# svc address-pool ADDRESSES
Device(config-webvpn-context)# end

Full Tunnel Configuration

The following example, starting in global configuration mode, configures full Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client tunnel support on an SSL VPN gateway:

Device(config)# webvpn context context1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE
Device(config-webvpn-context)# functions svc-enabled
Device(config-webvpn-context)# functions svc-required
Device(config-webvpn-context)# svc default-domain cisco.com
Device(config-webvpn-context)# svc dns-server primary 192.168.3.1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# svc dns-server secondary 192.168.4.1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# svc dpd-interval gateway 30
Device(config-webvpn-context)# svc dpd-interval client 300
Device(config-webvpn-context)# svc homepage www.cisco.com
Device(config-webvpn-context)# svc keep-client-installed
Device(config-webvpn-context)# svc rekey method new-tunnel
Device(config-webvpn-context)# svc rekey time 3600
Device(config-webvpn-context)# end

What to Do Next

Proceed to the Configuring Advanced SSL VPN Tunnel Features section to see advanced Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client tunnel configuration information.

Configuring Advanced SSL VPN Tunnel Features

This section describes advanced Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client tunnel configurations. The following configuration steps are completed in this task:

- Split tunnel support and split DNS resolution are enabled on the SSL VPN gateway.
- SSL VPN gateway support for Microsoft Internet Explorer proxy settings is configured.
- WINS resolution is configured for Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client tunnel clients.

Microsoft Internet Explorer Proxy Configuration—The SSL VPN gateway can be configured to pass or bypass Microsoft Internet Explorer (MSIE) proxy settings. Only HTTP proxy settings are supported by the SSL VPN gateway. MSIE proxy settings have no effect on any other supported browser.

Split Tunneling—Split tunnel support allows you to configure a policy that permits specific traffic to be carried outside of the Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client tunnel. Traffic is either included (resolved in tunnel) or excluded (resolved through the Internet service provider [ISP] or WAN connection). Tunnel resolution configuration is mutually exclusive. An IP address cannot be both included and excluded at the same time. Entering the local-lans keyword permits the remote user to access resources on a local LAN, such as network printer.
Before you begin

- SSL VPN gateway and context configurations are enabled and operational.
- The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client software package is installed for distribution on the SSL VPN gateway.

Note

Only Microsoft Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Apple-Mac, and Linux are supported on the remote client.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn context name
4. policy group name
5. svc split exclude {{ip-address mask | local-lans} | include ip-address mask}
6. svc split dns name
7. svc msie-proxy {exception host | option {auto | bypass-local | none}}
8. svc msie-proxy server host
9. svc wins-server {primary | secondary} ip-address
10. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> webvpn context name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> policy group name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Configures split tunneling for policy group remote users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>svc split exclude</strong>  {{ip-address mask</td>
<td>local-lans}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc split exclude 192.168.1.1 0.0.0.255 | |
| **Step 6** | Configures the SSL VPN gateway to resolve the specified fully qualified DNS names through the Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client tunnel. |
| **svc split dns name** | - A default domain was configured in the previous task with the **svc default-domain** command. DNS names configured with the **svc split dns** command are configured in addition. - Up to 10 split DNS statements can be configured. |
| **Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc split dns www.examplecompany.com | |
| **Step 7** | Configures MSIE browser proxy settings for policy group remote users. |
| **svc msie-proxy {exception host | option {auto | bypass-local | none}}** | - Entering the option auto keywords configures the browser of the remote user to autodetect proxy settings. - Entering the option bypass-local keywords configures local addresses to bypass the proxy. - Entering the option none keywords configures the browser on the remote client to not use a proxy. |
| **Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc msie-proxy option auto | |
| **Step 8** | Specifies an MSIE proxy server for policy group remote users. |
| **svc msie-proxy server host** | - The proxy server is specified by entering an IP address or a fully qualified domain name. |
| **Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc msie-proxy server 10.10.10.1:80 | |
| **Step 9** | Configures WINS servers for policy group remote users. |
| **svc wins-server {primary | secondary} ip-address** | |
| **Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc wins-server primary 172.31.1.1 | |
| **Step 10** | Exists the WebVPN group policy configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode. |
| **end** | |
| **Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-group)# end | |
Examples

Split DNS Configuration
The following example, starting in global configuration mode, configures the following DNS names to be resolved in the Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client tunnel:

Device(config)# webvpn context context1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc split dns www.example.com
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc split dns myexample.com

Including and Excluding IP Prefixes
The following example configures a list of IP addresses to be resolved over the tunnel (included) and a list to be resolved outside of the tunnel (excluded):

Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc split exclude 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc split include 172.16.1.0 255.255.255.0

MSIE Proxy Configuration
The following example configures MSIE proxy settings:

Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc msie-proxy option auto
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc msie-proxy exception www.example.com
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc msie-proxy exception 10.20.20.1
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc msie-proxy server 10.10.10.1:80

WINS Server Configuration
The following example configures primary and secondary WINS servers for the policy group:

Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc wins-server primary 172.31.1.1
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc wins-server secondary 172.31.2.1
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc wins-server secondary 172.31.3.1
Device(config-webvpn-group)# end

Configuring VRF Virtualization
VRF Virtualization allows you to associate a traditional VRF with an SSL VPN context configuration. This feature allows you to apply different configurations and reuse address space for different groups of users in your organization.

Before you begin

• A VRF has been configured in global configuration mode.
• SSL VPN gateway and context configurations are enabled and operational.
• A policy group has been configured and associated with the WebVPN context.
Only a single VRF can be configured for each SSL VPN context configuration.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn context name
4. vrf-name name
5. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> webvpn context name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> vrf-name name</td>
<td>Associates a VRF with an SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# vrf-name vrf1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exists the WebVPN context configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note

When you configure the VRF Virtualization feature in Cisco IOS Release 12.4(24)T1 and later releases, the following message is displayed:

```
% IP VRF vrf1 configuration applied.
% But please use Virtual-Template to configure VRF.
```

See the Configuring SSL VPN DVTI Support section for the procedure to configure IP features using virtual template.
Configuring ACL Rules

The ACL rules can be overridden for an individual user when the user logs in to the gateway (using AAA policy attributes). If a user session has no ACL attribute configured, all application requests from that user session are permitted by default.

Before you begin

Before configuring the ACL rules, you must have first configured the time range using the `time-range` command (this prerequisite is in addition to optionally configuring the time range, in the task table, as part of the `permit` or `deny` entries).

Note

There is no limitation on the maximum number of filtering rules that can be configured for each ACL entry, but keeping the number below 50 should have no significant impact on router performance.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. `webvpn context` name
4. `acl` acl-name
5. Do one of the following:
   • `permit` [url [any | url-string]] [ip | tcp | udp | http | https | cifs] [any | source-ip source-mask] [any | destination-ip destination-mask] [time-range time-range-name] [syslog]
   • `deny` [url [any | url-string]] [ip | tcp | udp | http | https | cifs] [any | source-ip source-mask] [any | destination-ip destination-mask] [time-range time-range-name] [syslog]
6. `add` position acl-entry
7. `error-url` access-denied-page-url
8. `error-msg` message-string
9. `list`
10. `end`

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 3** webvpn context *name*  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# webvpn context context1 | Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context. |
| **Step 4** acl *acl-name*  
**Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-context)# acl acl1 | Defines the ACL and enters WebVPN ACL configuration mode. |
| **Step 5** Do one of the following:  
- **permit** [url [any | url-string]] [ip | tcp | udp | http  
  | https | cifs] [any | source-ip source-mask] [any |  
  destination-ip destination-mask] [time-range  
  time-range-name] [syslog]  
- **deny** [url [any | url-string]] [ip | tcp | udp | http  
  | https | cifs] [any | source-ip source-mask] [any |  
  destination-ip destination-mask] [time-range  
  time-range-name] [syslog]  
**Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-acl)# permit url any | Sets conditions in a named SSL VPN access list that will permit or deny packets. |
| **Step 6** add position acl-entry  
**Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-acl)# add 3 permit url any | (Optional) Adds an ACL entry at a specified position. |
| **Step 7** error-url  
**Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-acl)# error-url “http://www.example.com” | (Optional) Defines a URL as an ACL violation page.  
- If the **error-url** command is configured, the user is redirected to a predefined URL for every request that is not allowed. If the **error-url** command is not configured, the user gets a standard, gateway-generated error page. |
| **Step 8** error-msg *message-string*  
**Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-acl)# error-msg “If you have any questions, please contact <a href=mailto:employee1@example.com>Employee1</a>.” | (Optional) Displays a specific error message when a user logs in and his or her request is denied. |
| **Step 9** list  
**Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-acl)# list | (Optional) Lists the currently configured ACL entries sequentially and assigns a position number. |
Purpose
Command or Action | Purpose
---|---
**Step 10** |  
End | Exists the WebVPN ACL configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-acl)# end

---

### Associating an ACL Attribute with a Policy Group

**Note**

Associating an ACL attribute for an individual user must be performed as part of a AAA operation.

- The ACL rules can be overridden for an individual user when the user logs in to the gateway (using AAA policy attributes).
- If a user session has no ACL attribute configured, all application requests from that user session are permitted by default.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn context *name*
4. policy group *name*
5. exit
6. acl acl-name
7. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** | enable
**Example:**
Device> enable |
| | Enables privileged EXEC mode.
- Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** | configure terminal
**Example:**
Device# configure terminal |
| | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** | webvpn context *name*
**Example:**
Device(config)# webvpn context context1 |
| | Configures the SSL VPN context and enters WebVPN context configuration mode. |
### Monitoring and Maintaining ACLs

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `debug webvpn acl`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> <code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> <code>debug webvpn acl</code></td>
<td>Displays information about ACLs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> <code>Device# debug webvpn acl</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring SSO Netegrity Cookie Support for a Virtual Context

To configure SSO Netegrity cookie support for a virtual context, perform the following steps.
Before you begin

**Note**
A Cisco plug-in must first be installed on a Netegrity server.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `webvpn context name`
4. `sso-server name`
5. `web-agent-url url`
6. `secret-key key-name`
7. `max-retry-attempts number-of-retries`
8. `request-timeout number-of-seconds`
9. `end`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>enable</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device&gt; enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>webvpn context name</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><strong>sso-server name</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-webvpn-context)# sso-server “test-sso-server”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td><strong>web-agent-url url</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-webvpn-sso-server)# web-agent-url <a href="http://www.example.com/webvpn/">http://www.example.com/webvpn/</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Associating an SSO Server with a Policy Group

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `webvpn context name`
4. `policy group name`
5. `sso-server name`
6. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> <code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: <code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td>Entry your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Purpose Command or Action

**Step 6**

`secret-key key-name`

**Example:**

```
Device(config-webvpn-sso-server)# secret-key "12345"
```

Configures the policy server secret key that is used to secure authentication requests.

**Step 7**

`max-retry-attempts number-of-retries`

**Example:**

```
Device(config-webvpn-sso-server)# max-retry-attempts 3
```

Sets the maximum number of retries before SSO authentication fails.

**Step 8**

`request-timeout number-of-seconds`

**Example:**

```
Device(config-webvpn-sso-server)# request-timeout 15
```

Sets the number of seconds before an authentication request times out.

**Step 9**

`end`

**Example:**

```
Device(config-webvpn-sso-server)# end
```

Exits the WebVPN SSO server configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Configures the SSL VPN context and enters WebVPN context configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 3**

**webvpn context name**

*Example:*

Device(config)# webvpn context context1

**Step 4**

**policy group name**

*Example:*

Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE

**Step 5**

**sso-server name**

*Example:*

Device(config-webvpn-group)# sso-server "test-sso-server"

**Step 6**

**end**

*Example:*

Device(config-webvpn-group)# end

### Configuring URL Obfuscation (Masking)

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn context name
4. policy group name
5. mask-urls
6. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adding a CIFS Server URL List to an SSL VPN Context and Attaching It to a Policy Group

**Before you begin**

Before adding a CIFS server URL list to an SSL VPN context, you must have already set up the Web VPN context using the `webvpn context` command, and you must be in WebVPN context configuration mode.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `cifs-url-list name`
2. `heading text-string`
3. `url-text name`
4. `end`
5. `policy group name`
6. `cifs-url-list name`
7. `end`
DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> cifs-url-list name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN URL list configuration mode to configure a list of CIFS server URLs to which a user has access on the portal page of an SSL VPN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# cifs-url-list cl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> heading text-string</td>
<td>Configures the heading that is displayed above URLs listed on the portal page of an SSL VPN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-url)# heading &quot;cifs-url&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> url-text name</td>
<td>Adds an entry to a URL list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-url)# url-text &quot;SSLVPN-SERVER2&quot; url-value &quot;\SLVPN-SERVER2&quot;</td>
<td>More than one entry can be added by reentering the url-text command for each subsequent entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits WebVPN URL list configuration mode and returns to WebVPN context configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-url)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> policy group name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> cifs-url-list name</td>
<td>Attaches a URL list to a policy group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-group)# cifs-url-list &quot;cl&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits WebVPN group policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-group)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring User-Level Bookmarks

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn context name
4. user-profile location flash: directory
5. end
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> webvpn context <em>name</em></td>
<td>Configures the SSL VPN context and enters WebVPN context configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> user-profile location <em>flash: directory</em></td>
<td>Stores bookmarks on a directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# user-profile location flash:webvpn/sslvpn/vpn_context/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> end</td>
<td>Exists the WebVPN context configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring FVRF

To configure FVRF so that the SSL VPN gateway is fully integrated into an MPLS network, perform the following steps.

**Before you begin**

As the following configuration task shows, IP VRF must be configured before the FVRF can be associated with the SSL VPN gateway. For more information about configuring IP VRF, see the Configuring IP VRF (*ip vrf* command) in the Additional References for SSL VPN section.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. *ip vrf* *vrf-name*
4. exit
5. webvpn gateway *name*
6. *vrfname* *name*
7. exit
## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.&lt;br&gt;• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>ip vrf <strong>vrf-name</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# ip vrf vrf_1</td>
<td>Defines a VPN VRF instance and enters VRF configuration mode.&lt;br&gt;<strong>Note</strong> The <code>vrf-name</code> argument specified here must be the same as the <code>name</code> argument in Step 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>exit&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-vrf)# exit</td>
<td>Exits VRF configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>webvpn gateway <strong>name</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config)# webvpn gateway mygateway</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN gateway configuration mode to configure an SSL VPN gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>vrfname <strong>name</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# vrfname vrf_1</td>
<td>Associates a VPN FVRF with an SSL VPN gateway.&lt;br&gt;<strong>Note</strong> The value for the <code>name</code> argument here must be the same as the value for the <code>vrf-name</code> argument in Step 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>exit&lt;br&gt;<strong>Example:</strong>&lt;br&gt;Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# exit</td>
<td>Exits WebVPN gateway configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Disabling Full-Tunnel Cisco Express Forwarding

**Note** The `no webvpn cef` command disables all Web VPN Cisco Express Forwarding support, not just full-tunnel Cisco Express Forwarding support.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `no webvpn cef`
**Configuring Automatic Authentication and Authorization**

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn context *name*
4. aaa authentication auto
5. aaa authorization list *name*
6. exit

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no webvpn cef</td>
<td>Disables full-tunnel Cisco Express Forwarding support.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>The <code>webvpn cef</code> command is enabled by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# no webvpn cef</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exists the WebVPN group policy configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>webvpn context name</td>
<td>Allows automatic authentication for users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td>- Users provide their usernames and passwords via the gateway page URL and do not have to again enter their usernames and passwords from the login page.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa authentication auto</td>
<td>Allows user attributes to get “pushed” during authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# aaa authentication auto</td>
<td>- name — Name of the list to be automatically authorized.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa authorization list name</td>
<td>Exists the WebVPN context configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# aaa authorization list 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-webvpn-context)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Configuring SSL VPN Client-Side Certificate-Based Authentication

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn import svc profile profile-name device-name
4. webvpn context context-name
5. authentication certificate aaa
6. username-prefill
7. ca trustpoint trustpoint-name
8. match-certificate certificate-name
9. policy group policy-name
10. svc profile profile-name
11. exit

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><strong>configure terminal</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><strong>webvpn import svc profile</strong> profile-name device-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# webvpn import svc profile profile1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>flash:AnyconnectProfile.tmpl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><strong>webvpn context</strong> context-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><strong>authentication certificate</strong> aaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>certificate aaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><strong>username-prefill</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# username-prefill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><strong>ca trustpoint</strong> trustpoint-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# ca trustpoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>trustpoint1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><strong>match-certificate</strong> certificate-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# match-certificate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>certificate1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td><strong>policy group</strong> policy-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>policy3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td><strong>svc profile</strong> profile-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc profile profile1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td><strong>exit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# exit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuring a URL Rewrite Splitter

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn context *name*
4. url rewrite
5. host *host-name*
6. ip *ip-address*
7. unmatched-action [direct-access | redirect]
8. exit

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> webvpn context <em>name</em></td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> url rewrite</td>
<td>Allows you to mangle selective URL requests and enters URL rewrite mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Note: You must enter either the host command (Step 5) or the ip command (Step 6).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# url rewrite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> host <em>host-name</em></td>
<td>Hostname of the site to be mangled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Note: You must enter either the host command (Step 5) or the ip command (Step 6).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-url-rewrite)# host <a href="http://www.examplecompany.com">www.examplecompany.com</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> ip <em>ip-address</em></td>
<td>IP address of the site to be mangled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Note: You must enter either the host command (Step 5) or the ip command (Step 6).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-url-rewrite)# ip 10.1.1.0 255.255.0.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

**Step 7**  
unmatched-action  [direct-access | redirect]  
**Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-url-rewrite)# unmatched-action  
direct-access

**Purpose**  
(Optional) Defines the action for the request to the public website.  
- **direct-access**—Provides the user with direct access to the URL. In addition, the user receives an information page stating that he or she can access the URL directly.  
- **redirect**—Provides the user with direct access to the URL, but the user does not receive the information page.

**Step 8**  
exit  
**Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-url-rewrite)# exit

### Configuring a Backend HTTP Proxy

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable  
2. configure terminal  
3. webvpn context  
4. policy group  
5. http proxy-server  
6. exit

#### DETAILED STEPS

**Step 1**  
**Command or Action**  
enable  
**Example:**  
Device> enable

**Purpose**  
Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
- Enter your password if prompted.

**Step 2**  
**Command or Action**  
configure terminal  
**Example:**  
Device# configure terminal

**Purpose**  
Enters global configuration mode.

**Step 3**  
**Command or Action**  
webvpn context  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# webvpn context context1

**Purpose**  
Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.

**Step 4**  
**Command or Action**  
policy group  
**Example:**  

**Purpose**  
Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.
### Purpose

Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---
Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group g1 | Allows user requests to go through a backend HTTP proxy.  
- **ip-address** — IP address of the proxy server.  
- **dns-name** — DNS of the proxy server.  
- **port port-number** — Proxy port number.

#### Step 5

**http proxy-server** {ip-address | dns-name} port port-number  
**Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-context)# http proxy-server 10.1.1.1 port 2034

#### Step 6

**exit**  
**Example:**  
Device(config-webvpn-group)# exit

---

### Configuring Stateless High Availability with HSRP for SSL VPN

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable  
2. configure terminal  
3. interface type slot/port  
4. standby number ip ip-address  
5. standby number name standby-name  
6. exit  
7. webvpn gateway name  
8. ip address number port port-number standby name  
9. exit

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
- Enter your password if prompted.  
**Example:**  
Device> enable |
| **Step 2** configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
**Example:**  
Device# configure terminal |
| **Step 3** interface type slot/port | Configures an interface type and enters interface configuration mode.  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# interface gateway 0/0 |
| **Step 4** standby number ip ip-address | Configures a standby IP address.  
**Example:**  
|
**Purpose**

Device(config-if)# standby 0 ip 10.1.1.1

**Step 5**

standby number name standby-name

**Example:**

Device(config-if)# standby 0 name SSLVPN

---

**Step 6**

exit

**Example:**

Device(config-if)# exit

---

**Step 7**

webvpn gateway name

**Example:**

Device(config)# webvpn gateway Gateway1

---

**Step 8**

ip address number port port-number standby name

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# ip address 10.1.1.1 port 443 standby SSLVPN

---

**Step 9**

exit

**Example:**

Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# exit

---

### Configuring Internationalization

#### Generating the Template Browser Attribute File

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `webvpn create template browser-attribute device`
3. Copy the browser attribute file to another device on which you can edit the language being configured.
4. Copy the edited file back to the storage device.

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Example: Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: The IP address configured here must be the same as the IP address that was configured as the standby IP address (<code>standby number ip ip-address</code>).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Generates the browser attribute template XML file (battr_tpl.xml).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>webvpn create template browser-attribute device:</code></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# webvpn create template browser-attribute flash:</code></td>
<td>For an example of how to copy the file to your PC, see the Example: Copying the Browser Attribute File to Another PC for Editing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Copy the browser attribute file to another device on which you can edit the language being configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Copy the edited file back to the storage device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>What to Do Next</strong></td>
<td>Proceed to the Importing the Browser Attribute File section.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Importing the Browser Attribute File**

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `webvpn context name`
4. `browser-attribute import device:file-name`
5. `exit`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device&gt; enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>webvpn context name</code></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# webvpn context context1</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Imports the edited browser attribute file from the storage device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>browser-attribute import device:file-name</code></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config-webvpn-context)# browser-attribute import flash:battr_tpl.xml</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Purpose | Command or Action
--- | ---
Step 5 | exit  
Example:  
Device(config-webvpn-context)# exit

What to Do Next
Proceed to the “Verifying That the Browser Attribute File Was Imported Correctly” section.

Verifying That the Browser Attribute File Was Imported Correctly

SUMMARY STEPS
1. enable  
2. show running-config

DETAILED STEPS
| Command or Action | Purpose |
--- | --- |
Step 1 | enable  
Example:  
Device> enable

Step 2 | show running-config  
Example:  
Device# show running-config

What to Do Next
Proceed to the Creating the Language File section.

Creating the Language File

SUMMARY STEPS
1. enable  
2. webvpn create template language device:  
3. Copy the language lang.js file to a PC for editing.  
4. Copy the edited language lang.js file to the storage device.  
5. webvpn create template language {japanese | customize language-name device;file}

DETAILED STEPS
| Command or Action | Purpose |
--- | --- |
Step 1 | enable

Enables privileged EXEC mode.
### Command or Action
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example:</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2**

**webvpn create template language** `device`:

**Example:**

Device# webvpn create template language flash:

**Create the language template file lang.js.**

**Note:** A lang.js file does not have to be created if the language is English or Japanese.

**Step 3**

Copy the language lang.js file to a PC for editing.

**Example:**

For an example of how to copy the language file to another PC, see the Example: Copying the Language File to Another PC for Editing.

**Step 4**

Copy the edited language lang.js file to the storage device.

**Example:**

For an example of how to copy the edited file to the storage device, see the Example: Copying the Edited Language File to the Storage Device.

**Step 5**

**webvpn create template language** `{japanese | customize language-name device:file}`

**Example:**

Device# webvpn create template language japanese

**Create templates for multilanguage support for messages initiated by the headend in an SSL VPN.**

### What to Do Next

Proceed to the Importing the Language File section.

### Importing the Language File

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `webvpn context name`
4. `language {japanese | customize language-name device:file}`
5. `exit`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
| `enable`
| **Example:**
| Device> enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode. |
| | • Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2**
| `configure terminal`
| **Example:**
| Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>webvpn context name</code></td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>`language {japanese</td>
<td>customize language-name device:file}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# language Japanese</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
<td>Exists the WebVPN context configuration mode and enters the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### What to Do Next

Proceed to the “Verifying That the Language File Was Imported Correctly.”

### Verifying That the Language File Was Imported Correctly

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `show running-config`
3. `exit`

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>show running-config</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><code>exit</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# exit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### What to Do Next

Proceed to the “Creating the URL List” section.
Creating the URL List

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. `webvpn create template url-list device:
3. Copy the XML file to a PC for editing.
4. Copy the edited url-list XML file back to the storage device.
5. exit

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td><code>webvpn create template url-list device:</code></td>
<td>Creates the url-list template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# <code>webvpn create template url-list flash:</code></td>
<td>For an example of how to copy an XML file to a PC for editing, see the Example: URL List.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Copy the XML file to a PC for editing.</td>
<td>For an example of how to copy the edited url-list XML file back to a storage device, see the Example: URL List.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Copy the edited url-list XML file back to the storage device.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exists the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What to Do Next

Proceed to the Importing the File into the URL List and Binding It to a Policy Group section.

Importing the File into the URL List and Binding It to a Policy Group

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. `configure terminal`
3. `webvpn context name`
4. `url-list name`
5. `import devicesfile`
6. exit
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
* Step 1 | Device> enable |  
- Enter your password if prompted.  
| Step 2 | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| Step 3 | webvpn context *name* | Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.  
* Step 3 | Device(config)# webvpn context context1 |  
| Step 4 | url-list *name* | Enters WebVPN URL list configuration mode to configure a list of URLs to which a user has access on the portal page of an SSL VPN and attaches the URL list to a policy group. |
| Step 5 | import device:file | Imports the user-defined URL list. |
| Step 6 | exit | Exits WebVPN URL list configuration mode. |
| Step 7 | policy group *group name* | Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.  
* Step 7 | Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group policygroup1 |  
| Step 8 | url-list *name* | Binds the URL list to the policy group. |

### What to Do Next

Proceed to the Verifying That the URL List File Was Bound Correctly to the Policy Group section.
Verifying That the URL List File Was Bound Correctly to the Policy Group

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. show running-config
3. exit

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 show running-config</td>
<td>Verifies that the url-list file was bound correctly to the policy group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 exit</td>
<td>Exists the privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring a Virtual Template

A virtual template enables SSL VPN to interoperate with IP features such as NAT, firewall, and policy-based routing.

**Before you begin**

- SSL VPN gateway and context configurations are enabled and operational.
- If a VRF is needed, configure it before creating the virtual template.
- If the virtual template is to be associated with a firewall security zone, create the security zone before creating the virtual template.

**Note**

In order for a virtual template to work with SSL VPN, you must configure the ip unnumbered command on the virtual template.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface virtual-template number
### Configuring a Virtual Template

4. `ip unnumbered type number`
5. `exit`
6. `webvpn context name`
7. `virtual-template number`
8. `exit`
9. `show webvpn context [name]`

#### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>* Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> <code>interface virtual-template number</code></td>
<td>Creates an interface for the virtual template and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# interface virtual-template 200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> <code>ip unnumbered type number</code></td>
<td>Enables IP processing on an interface without assigning an explicit IP address to the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet 0/0</td>
<td>* The <code>type</code> and <code>number</code> arguments specify another interface on which the switch has an assigned IP address. The interface specified cannot be another unnumbered interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> <code>exit</code></td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-if)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> <code>webvpn context name</code></td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> <code>virtual-template number</code></td>
<td>Associates a virtual template with an SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-webvpn-context)# virtual-template 200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> <code>exit</code></td>
<td>Exists the WebVPN context configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-webvpn-context)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring SSL VPN DVTI Support

Configuring per-Tunnel Virtual Templates

Perform this task to configure per-tunnel virtual templates. This task describes how to provide DVTI support for an SSL VPN.

A virtual template is configured with the desired IP features. This virtual template is configured in a WebVPN context on a per-tunnel or per-user basis (because a user will have only one tunnel established at a time). Hence the virtual template configuration is applied on a per-tunnel basis for each SSL VPN full tunnel established in the WebVPN context. This configuration also helps you apply a distinct configuration to each user connecting to the WebVPN context using a AAA server.

The distinct per-user policy configuration is downloaded from the AAA server. This configuration includes group policy attributes and ACLs, and is applied to every user connecting to the WebVPN context on a per-user basis.

If a per-user attribute such as ACL is configured both on the AAA server and the virtual template, then the attribute configured on the AAA server takes precedence. The users logged in to the client computer will have the ACL configuration from the AAA server but will have other configurations, such as firewalls and VRF, from the virtual template. That is, the configuration applied to the users will be a combination of the virtual template configuration and the configuration available on the AAA server.

For example, if IP features such as firewalls, ACLs, and VRF are configured in a virtual template and user attributes such as ACLs are configured on the AAA server, the attributes configured on the AAA server take precedence. The users logged in to the client computer will have the ACL configuration from the AAA server but will have firewall and VRF configurations from the virtual template. That is, the configuration applied to the users will be a combination of virtual templates and AAA, where AAA attributes have a higher priority when there is a configuration conflict.

See the Configuring RADIUS Attribute Support for SSL VPN section for a list of AAA attributes that support SSL VPN.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `webvpn context context-name`
4. `virtual-template interface-number tunnel`
5. `inservice`
6. `exit`
## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
  enable
  **Example:**
  Device> enable                  | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  • Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2**
  configure terminal
  **Example:**
  Device# configure terminal      | Enters global configuration mode.            |
| **Step 3**
  webvpn context *context-name*  | Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context. |
  **Example:**
  Device(config)# webvpn context context1 |
| **Step 4**
  virtual-template *interface-number* tunnel
  **Example:**
  Device(config-webvpn-context)# virtual-template 1 tunnel | Associates virtual templates for each full tunnel session. |
| **Step 5**
  inservice
  **Example:**
  Device(config-webvpn-context)# inservice | Enables an SSL VPN context.  
  **Note** If a context is already configured and enabled, then you must disable the context using the **no inservice** command, specify the virtual template using the **virtual-template interface-number** command, and then enable the SSL VPN context using the **inservice** command. |
| **Step 6**
  exit
  **Example:**
  Device(config-webvpn-context)# exit | Exits WebVPN context configuration mode. |

### Troubleshooting Tips

Use the following commands to debug any errors that you may encounter when you configure the per-Tunnel Virtual Templates:

- `debug vtemplate {cloning | error | event}`
- `debug webvpn tunnel`

### Configuring per-Context Virtual Templates

This task describes how to configure virtual tunnel interface support on a per-context basis.
A virtual template is configured with IP features such as NAT, firewalls, and PBR. This virtual template is configured in a WebVPN context, and enables SSL VPN to interoperate with the IP features configured. This configuration is applied to all users connecting to that WebVPN context.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `webvpn context context-name`
4. `virtual-template interface-number`
5. `inservice`
6. `exit`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> webvpn context context-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> virtual-template interface-number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# virtual-template 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Step 5** inservice | Enables an SSL VPN context.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# inservice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# exit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** If a context is already configured and enabled, then you must disable the context using the `no inservice` command, specify the virtual template using the `virtual-template interface-number` command, and then enable the SSL VPN context using the `inservice` command.
Troubleshooting Tips

Use the following commands to debug any errors that you may encounter when you configure the per-Context Virtual Templates:

- `debug vtemplate {cloning | error | event}`
- `debug webvpn tunnel`

Configuring SSL VPN Phase-4 Features

Configuring the Start Before Logon Functionality

In order to import the AnyConnect profile to the Cisco IOS headend, the administrator must download the AnyConnect profile from an AnyConnect client (this profile comes by default with AnyConnect), update the `UseStartBeforeLogin` XML tag available in the profile file to inform AnyConnect to support SBL, and then import the modified profile into the Cisco IOS software.

The secure gateway administrator maintains the AnyConnect profile file and distributes it to the clients.

Following is an extract of the Cisco IOS AnyConnect VPN client profile XML file:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<AnyConnectProfile xmlns="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/encoding/
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xsi:schemaLocation="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/encoding/
AnyConnectProfile.xsd">
  <ClientInitialization>
    <UseStartBeforeLogon UserControllable="false">true</UseStartBeforeLogon>
  </ClientInitialization>
  <ServerList>
    <HostEntry>
      <HostName>abc</HostName>
      <HostAddress>abc.cisco.com</HostAddress>
    </HostEntry>
  </ServerList>
</AnyConnectProfile>
```

You can select the hosts from the above list.

Data is required to connect to a specific host.

The SBL functionality connects the client PC to the enterprise network even before the users log into the PC. This functionality allows the administrator to run the logon scripts even if the user is not connected to the enterprise network. This is useful for a number of deployment scenarios where the user is outside the physical corporate network and cannot access the resources until his system is connected to the corporate network.

Only an administrator can enable or disable SBL. The end users accessing the client PC are not allowed to enable or disable this functionality.

Before you begin

SSL VPN must have the ability to import profiles on the Cisco IOS software and must be able to send the AnyConnect profile to the client.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `webvpn import svc profile profile-name device-name`
4. `webvpn context context-name`
5. `policy group group-name`
6. `svc profile profile-name`
7. `svc module module-name`
8. `end`
9. `show running-config`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>webvpn import svc profile profile-name device-name</code></td>
<td>Imports the AnyConnect profile to the Cisco IOS headend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# webvpn import svc profile profile1 flash:newName</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>webvpn context context-name</code></td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>policy group group-name</code></td>
<td>Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group group1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>svc profile profile-name</code></td>
<td>Applies the concerned profile to the respective WebVPN group policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc profile profile1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>svc module module-name</code></td>
<td>Enables the SBL functionality support for the Cisco IOS SSL VPN headend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc module vpngina</td>
<td>Only the vpngina SVC module is supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 8</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td>Exits WebVPN group policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# end</td>
<td>You must restart your system for the SBL functionality to take effect.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Troubleshooting Tips

Use the **debug webvpn cookie** command to debug any errors that you may encounter when you configure the SBL functionality.

### Configuring Split ACL Support

Perform this task to configure split ACL support.

When the tunnel is active, Cisco IOS SSL VPN supports the **split include** and **split exclude** commands to filter and classify the traffic based on IP. Because the Cisco IOS software supports ACLs to classify the traffic, standard ACL support is provided to filter the traffic.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. ip access-list standard \{access-list-number | access-list-name\}
4. permit ip-address
5. deny ip-address
6. exit
7. webvpn context context-name
8. policy group policy-name
9. svc split \{include | exclude\} acl acl-list-name
10. end
11. show running-config

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>ip access-list standard {access-list-number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# ip access-list standard 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Defines an IP access list or object group access control list (OGACL) by name or number and enters the standard ACL configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 4    | permit  | ip-address | Sets conditions to allow packets to pass a named SSL VPN access list.  
Example:  
Device(config-std-nacl)# permit 10.0.0.1  
Note: You can use the permit and deny commands in any combination, as required. |
| 5    | deny    | ip-address | Sets conditions in a named SSL VPN access list that will deny packets.  
Example:  
Device(config-std-nacl)# deny 10.0.0.2  
Note: You can use the permit and deny commands in any combination, as required. |
| 6    | exit    |         | Exits standard ACL configuration mode.  
Example:  
Device(config-std-nacl)# exit |
| 7    | webvpn context | context-name | Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.  
Example:  
Device(config)# webvpn context context1 |
| 8    | policy group | policy-name | Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.  
Example:  
Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group default |
| 9    | svc split | {include | exclude} acl acl-list-name | Enables split tunneling for Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client tunnel clients.  
Example:  
Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc split include acl 1 |
| 10   | end     |         | Exits WebVPN group policy configuration mode.  
Example:  
Device(config-webvpn-group)# end |
| 11   | show running-config | | (Optional) Displays the contents of the current running configuration file or the configuration for a specific module, Layer 2 VLAN, class map, interface, map class, policy map, or virtual circuit (VC) class.  
Example:  
Device# show running-config |

### Configuring IP NetMask Functionality

The IP NetMask functionality provides SVC or AnyConnect client provision to configure the network mask when the **ip local pool** command is configured on the router. This mask must be a classless mask.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable  
2. configure terminal
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> webvpn context context-name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# webvpn context context1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> policy group group-name</td>
<td>Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> svc address-pool pool-name netmask ip-netmask</td>
<td>Configures the desired netmask on the router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# svc address-pool pool1 netmask 255.255.0.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits WebVPN group policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config-webvpn-group)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> show running-config</td>
<td>(Optional) Displays the contents of the current running configuration file or the configuration for a specific module, Layer 2 VLAN, class map, interface, map class, policy map, or virtual circuit (VC) class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show running-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring the DTLS Port

DTLS listens on port 443 by default. Perform this task to configure the desired DTLS port.
SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn gateway gateway-name
4. dtls port port-number
5. end
6. show webvpn session [user user-name] context {context-name | all} [detail]

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | enable           | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
**Example:**
Device> enable  
• Enter your password if prompted. |
| 2    | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode.  
**Example:**
Device# configure terminal |
| 3    | webvpn gateway gateway-name | Enters WebVPN gateway configuration mode to configure a SSL VPN gateway.  
**Example:**
Device(config)# webvpn gateway gateway1 |
| 4    | dtls port port-number | Configures a DTLS port.  
**Example:**
Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# dtls port 1045 |
| 5    | end              | Exits WebVPN gateway configuration mode.  
**Example:**
Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# end |
| 6    | show webvpn session [user user-name] context {context-name | all} [detail] | (Optional) Displays SSL VPN user session information.  
**Example:**
Device# show webvpn session context all |

Troubleshooting Tips

The **debug webvpn dtls [errors | events | packets]** command can help troubleshoot IOS SSL VPN DTLS support.
Using SSL VPN clear Commands

This section describes clear commands that are used to perform the following tasks:

- Clear NBNS cache information
- Clear remote user sessions
- Clear (or reset) SSL VPN application and access counters

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. clear webvpn nbns [context {name | all}]
3. clear webvpn session [user name] context {name | all}]
4. clear webvpn stats [cifs | citrix | mangle | port-forward | sso | tunnel] [context {name | all}]

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 clear webvpn nbns [context {name</td>
<td>all}]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# clear webvpn nbns context all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 clear webvpn session [user name] context {name</td>
<td>all}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# clear webvpn session context all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 clear webvpn stats [cifs</td>
<td>citrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# clear webvpn stats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verifying SSL VPN Configurations

This section describes how to use show commands to verify the following:

- SSL VPN gateway configuration
- SSL VPN context configuration
- CSD and Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client installation status
- NetBIOS name services information
- SSL VPN group policy configuration
- SSL VPN user session information
- SSL VPN application statistics
- SSL VPN DVTI Support configuration

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `show webvpn context [name]`
3. `show webvpn gateway [name]`
4. `show webvpn nbns context {all | name}`
5. `show webvpn policy group name context {all | name}`
6. `show webvpn session [user name] context {all | name}`
7. `show webvpn stats [cifs | citrix | mangle | port-forward | sso | tunnel] [detail] [context {all | name}]
8. `show webvpn context [context-name | brief]`
9. `show interface virtual-access interface-number`
10. `show webvpn session [user user-name] context {context-name | all} [detail]`
11. `show running-config interface virtual-access interface-number`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | `enable`          | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
|      | Example: `Device> enable` |  
|      |                   | • Enter your password if prompted.  
| 2    | `show webvpn context [name]` | Displays the operational status and configuration parameters for SSL VPN context configurations.  
|      | Example: `Device# show webvpn context` |  
| 3    | `show webvpn gateway [name]` | Displays the status of the SSL VPN gateway.  
|      | Example: `Device# show webvpn gateway` |  
| 4    | `show webvpn nbns context {all | name}` | Displays information in the NBNS cache.  
|      | Example: `Device# show webvpn nbns context all` |  
| 5    | `show webvpn policy group name context {all | name}` | Displays the context configuration associated with a policy group.  
|      | Example: `Device# show webvpn policy group ONE context all` |  
| 6    | `show webvpn session [user name] context {all | name}` | Displays SSL VPN user session information.  
|      | Example: `Device# show webvpn session user NAME context all` |  

SSL VPN Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS Release 15M&T
Using SSL VPN Debug Commands

To monitor and manage your SSL VPN configurations, perform the following steps.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **enable**
2. **debug webvpn** [verbose] [aaa | acl | cifs | citrix | cookie | count | csd | data | dns | emweb | entry | context-name | [source ip] | [network-mask] | [user username] | [http | authentication | trace | package | [sdps | [level number] | [sock | [flow] | [ssol | [trie | [tunnel | [traffic acl-number] | [verbose] | [url-disp] | [webservice | [verbose]]

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

- **Step 2**
  - `debug webvpn [verbose] [webvpn] [cookie [verbose]] [count] [csd] [data] [dns] [emweb] [state] [entry context-name [source ip network-mask] [user username] [http [authentication] [trace] [verbose]] [package] [sdps [level number]] [sock [flow]] [sso] [timer] [trie] [tunnel [traffic acl-number] [verbose]] [url-disp] [webservice [verbose]]`

### Purpose

Enables the display of debug information for SSL VPN applications and network activity.

**Example:**

```
Device# debug webvpn
```

### Configuration Examples for SSL VPN

#### Example: Configuring a Generic SSL VPN Gateway

The following output example shows how to configure a generic SSL VPN gateway in privileged EXEC mode:

```
webvpn gateway SSL_gateway2
  ip address 10.1.1.1. port 442
  ssl trustpoint TP_self_signed _4138349635
  inservice
!
webvpn context SSL_gateway2
  ssl authenticate verify all
  !
  policy group default
  default-group-policy default
  gateway SSL_gateway2
  inservice
```

#### Example: Configuring an ACL

The following output example shows how to associate acl1 (ACL) with policy group “default.”

```
webvpn context context1
  ssl authenticate verify all
  !
  acl "acl1"
    error-msg "warning!!!..."
    permit url "http://www.example1.com"
    deny url "http://www.example2.com"
    permit http any any
  !
  nbns-list l1
    nbns-server 10.1.1.20
  !
  cifs-url-list "c1"
    heading "cifs-url"
    url-text "SSL VPN-SERVER2" url-value "\\SSL VPN-SERVER2"
```
Example: Configuring HTTP Proxy

The following output example shows how to configure HTTP proxy and how to automatically download the home page of the user from the portal (home) page of “http://www.example.com”:

```snippet
webvpn context myContext
  ssl authenticate verify all
!
port-forward "email"
  local-port 20016 remote-server "ssl-server1.SSL example1.com" remote-port 110 description "POP-ssl-server1"
!
policy group myPolicy
  port-forward "email" auto-download http-proxy proxy-url "http://www.example.com"

in-service
```

Example: Configuring Microsoft File Shares for Clientless Remote Access

NBNS Server List Example

The following output example, starting in global configuration mode shows how to configure a server list for NBNS resolution:

```snippet
Device(config)# webvpn context context1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# nbns-list SERVER_LIST
Device(config-webvpn-nbnslist)# nbns-server 172.16.1.1 master
Device(config-webvpn-nbnslist)# nbns-server 172.16.2.2 timeout 10 retries 5
Device(config-webvpn-nbnslist)# nbns-server 172.16.3.3 timeout 10 retries 5
Device(config-webvpn-nbnslist)# exit
```

File Share Permissions Example

The following output example shows how to attach the server list to and enable full file and network access permissions for the policy group ONE:

```snippet
Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE
Device(config-webvpn-group)# nbns-list SERVER_LIST
Device(config-webvpn-group)# functions file-access
Device(config-webvpn-group)# functions file-browse
Device(config-webvpn-group)# functions file-entry
Device(config-webvpn-group)# end
```
Example: Configuring Citrix Application Support for Clientless Remote Access

The following output example, starting in global configuration mode, shows how to enable Citrix application support for remote users with a source IP address in the 192.168.1.0/24 network:

```
Device(config)# access-list 100 permit ip 192.168.1.0 0.255.255.255 any
Device(config)# webvpn context context1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE
Device(config-webvpn-group)# citrix enabled
Device(config-webvpn-group)# filter citrix 100
```

Example: Configuring Application Port Forwarding

The following output example, starting in global configuration mode, shows how to configure port forwarding for well-known e-mail application port numbers:

```
Device(config)# webvpn context context1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# port-forward EMAIL
Device(config-webvpn-port-fwd)# local-port 30016 remote-server mail1.company.com remote-port 110 description POP3
Device(config-webvpn-port-fwd)# local-port 30017 remote-server mail2.company.com remote-port 25 description SMTP
Device(config-webvpn-port-fwd)# local-port 30018 remote-server mail3.company.com remote-port 143 description IMAP
Device(config-webvpn-port-fwd)# exit
Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group ONE
Device(config-webvpn-group)# port-forward EMAIL
Device(config-webvpn-group)# end
```

Example: Configuring VRF Virtualization

The following output example, starting in global configuration mode, show how to associate the VRF under the SSL VPN context configuration:

```
Device(config)# ip vrf vrf1
Device(config-vrf)# rd 10.100.100.1:1
Device(config-vrf)# exit
Device(config)# webvpn context context1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# policy group group1
Device(config-webvpn-group)# exit
Device(config)# webvpn context context1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# default-group-policy policy1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# vrf-name vrf2
Device(config-webvpn-context)# end
```

When you configure the VRF Virtualization feature in Cisco IOS Release 12.4(24)T1 and later releases, the following message is displayed:

```
% IP VRF vrf1 configuration applied.
% But please use Virtual-Template to configure VRF.
```

See the SSL VPN DVTI Support section for an example on how to use a virtual template to configure a VRF.
Example: PKI Authentication Using the Entire Subject Name

The following configuration example displays how to use the entire subject name for PKI authentication:

```plaintext
aaa new-model
aaa authorization network tac-o group tacacs+
!
crypto pki trustpoint test
  enrollment url http://caserver:80
  revocation-check crl
  authorization list tac-o
  authorization username subjectname all
!
tacacs-server host 20.2.2.2 key a_secret_key
```

Example: RADIUS Accounting for SSL VPN Sessions

The following output example shows how to configure RADIUS accounting for SSL VPN user sessions:

```plaintext
version 12.4
service timestamps debug datetime msec
service timestamps log datetime msec
no service password-encryption
!
hostname host1
!
aaa new-model
!
  aaa accounting network SSL VPNaaa start-stop group radius
  aaa accounting update periodic 1
  aaa session-id common
  ip subnet-zero
  ip cef
!
no ip domain lookup
ip domain name cisco.com
ip name-server 172.16.2.133
ip name-server 172.16.11.48
!
line con 0
  exec-timeout 0 0
line aux 0
line vty 0 4
!
webvpn gateway GW1
  ip address 172.19.216.141 port 443
  inservice
!
webvpn gateway SSL VPN
  no inservice
!
webvpn install svc flash:/webvpn/svc.pkg
webvpn aaa accounting-list SSL VPNaaa
!
webvpn context Default_context
  ssl encryption
  ssl authenticate verify all
```
Example: URL Obfuscation (Masking)

The following output example shows how to configure URL obfuscation (masking) for policy group “gp_urlobf.”

```
!  no inservice
!

policy group gp_urlobf
  mask-urls
  default-group-policy gp_urlobf
  gateway gw domain dom
  inservice
!
```

Example: Adding a CIFS Server URL List and Attaching It to a Policy List

The following output example shows how to add the CIFS server URLs "SSLVPN-SERVER2” and “SSL-SERVER2” as portal page URLs to which a user has access. The example also shows how the two servers are attached to a policy group.

```
webvpn context context_1
  ssl authenticate verify all
  !
  acl "acl1"
    error-msg "warning!!!...."
    permit url "http://www.example1.com"
    deny url "http://www.example2.com"
    permit http any any
  !
  nbns-list l1
    nbns-server 10.1.1.20
  !
  cifs-url-list "c1"
    heading "cifs-url"
    url-text "SSLVPN-SERVER2" url-value "\SSLVPN-SERVER2"
    url-text "SSL-SERVER2" url-value "\SSL-SERVER2"
  !
  policy group default
    acl "acl1"
    cifs-url-list "c1"
    nbns-list "l1"
    functions file-access
    functions file-browse
    functions file-entry
    default-group-policy default
    gateway public
    inservice
!
```
Example: Typical SSL VPN Configuration

The following output example shows how to configure an SSL VPN that includes most of the features that are available using SSL VPN:

```conf
hostname sslvpn
!
!
aaa new-model
!
!
aaa authentication login default local group radius
!
!
crypto pki trustpoint Gateway
  enrollment selfsigned
  ip-address 192.168.22.13
  revocation-check crl
  rsakeypair KeyPair1 2048 2048
!
!
crypto pki certificate chain Gateway
  certificate self-signed 02
!
!
interface Loopback0
  ip address 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.0
!
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/1
  ip address 192.168.22.14 255.255.255.0 secondary
  ip address 192.168.22.13 255.255.255.0
  duplex auto
  speed auto
  media-type rj45
!
!
ip local pool svc-pool 10.10.10.100 10.10.10.110
!
!
ip radius source-interface FastEthernet1/1
!
!
webvpn gateway ssl-vpn
  ip address 192.168.22.13 port 443
  http-redirect port 80
  ssl trustpoint Gateway
  inservice
!
!
url-list "sslvpn-dt"
  url-text "sslvpn-dt" url-value "http://10.1.1.40"
  url-text "Exchange Server" url-value "http://10.1.1.40/exchange"
```
Example: Cisco Express Forwarding-Processed Packets

The following output example from the `show webvpn stats` command displays information about Cisco Express Forwarding-processed packets:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device# show webvpn stats</th>
<th>User session statistics:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active user sessions      : 56</td>
<td>AAA pending reqs : 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peak user sessions        : 117</td>
<td>Peak time : 00:13:19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active user TCP connns     : 0</td>
<td>Terminated user sessions : 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Session alloc failures    : 0</td>
<td>Authentication failures : 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN session timeout       : 0</td>
<td>VPN idle timeout : 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User cleared VPN sessions : 0</td>
<td>Exceeded ctx user limit : 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exceeded total user limit : 0</td>
<td>Server process rcvd pkts : 441004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client process sent pkts  : 921291</td>
<td>Server process sent pkts : 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client CEF received pkts  : 1334</td>
<td>Server CEF received pkts : 951610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client CEF rcv punt pkts  : 0</td>
<td>Server CEF rcv punt pkts : 779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client CEF sent pkts      : 1944439</td>
<td>Server CEF sent pkts : 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client CEF sent punt pkts : 21070</td>
<td>Server CEF sent punt pkts : 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: Cisco Express Forwarding-Processed Packets
Example: Multiple AnyConnect VPN Client Package Files

The following output example shows how to install three AnyConnect VPN Client packages to a gateway and displays the resulting `show webvpn install` command output:

```
Device(config)# webvpn install svc vpn1_i386-Release-2.0.0077-k9.pkg sequence 6
Device(config)# webvpn install svc vpn2_powerpc-Release-2.0.0077-k9.pkg sequence 8
Device(config)# webvpn install svc svc_1.pkg sequence 4
Device# show webvpn install status svc
```

SSLVPN Package SSL-VPN-Client version installed:
CISCO STC win2k+
2,0,0148
SSLVPN Package SSL-VPN-Client version installed:
CISCO STC Darwin_i386
2,0,0
Wed Nov  8 04:01:57 MST 2006
SSLVPN Package SSL-VPN-Client version installed:
CISCO STC Darwin_powerpc
2,0,0
Wed Nov  8 03:54:50 MST 2006

The following example shows that three AnyConnect VPN client packages have been configured and typical output from the `show running-config` command:

```
Device# show running-config | begin webvpn
webvpn install svc flash:/webvpn/svc_4.pkg sequence 4
!
webvpn install svc flash:/webvpn/svc_6.pkg sequence 6
!
webvpn install svc flash:/webvpn/svc_9.pkg sequence 9
```

Example: Local Authorization

The following output example shows how to configure local authorization:

```
aaa new-model
!
aaa authentication login default local
aaa authorization network default local
!
aaa attribute list l2
    attribute type banner "user2"
!
aaa attribute list l1
    attribute type banner "user1"
    attribute type urllist-name "my-url-list"
!
username user1 password 0 passwd1
username user1 aaa attribute list l1
username user2 password 0 passwd2
username user2 aaa attribute list l2
!
webvpn context best
   ssl authenticate verify all
   !
   url-list "my-url-list"
       heading "external url"
```
Example: URL Rewrite Splitter

The following output example shows how to configure URL mangling for a specific host and IP address. The unmatched action has been defined as direct access.

```plaintext
text-center
webvpn context e1

url rewrite
    host "www.example.com"
    ip 10.1.0.0 255.255.0.0
    unmatched-action direct-access

text-center
```

Example: Backend HTTP Proxy

The following output example shows how to configure a backend HTTP proxy:

```plaintext
text-center
webvpn context e1

policy group g1
    http proxy-server "192.0.2.0" port 2034
default-group-policy g1
```

Example: Stateless High Availability with HSRP

The figure below shows the topology of a typical stateless high availability with HSRP setup. The output example following the figure shows how to configure Device 1 and Device 2 for HSRP on gateway Webvpn.

*Figure 14: Stateless High Availability with HSRP Setup*
Device 1 Configuration

Device(config)# interface gateway 0/1
Device(config-if)# standby 0 ip 10.1.1.1
Device(config-if)# standby 0 name SSLVPN
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# webvpn gateway Webvpn
Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# ip address 10.1.1.1 port 443 standby SSLVPN

Device 2 Configuration

Device(config)# interface gateway 0/0
Device(config-if)# standby 0 ip 10.1.1.1
Device(config-if)# standby 0 name SSLVPN2
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# webvpn gateway Webvpn
Device(config-webvpn-gateway)# ip address 10.1.1.1 port 443 standby SSLVPN2

Example: Internationalization

Example: Generated Browser Attribute Template

The following output example is a generated browser attribute template:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!--
- Template file for browser attributes import
<color> - primary color
<scolor> - secondary color
<color> - text color
<stcolor> - secondary text color
<lmsg> - login message
<title> - browser title
<ticolor> - title color
Default value will be used if the field is not defined
Copyright (c) 2007-2008 by Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
-->
<settings>
  <color>#003333</color>
  <scolor>#336666</scolor>
  <tcolor>white</tcolor>
  <stcolor>black</stcolor>
  <lmsg>Welcome to Cisco Systems WebVPN Service</lmsg>
  <title>WebVPN Service</title>
  <ticolor>#003333</ticolor>
</settings>
```

Example: Copying the Browser Attribute File to Another PC for Editing

The following output example shows how to copy a browser attribute file to another PC for editing:

```
Device# copy flash: tftp:
Source filename [battr_tpl.xml ]?
Address or name of remote host []? 10.1.1.30
Destination filename [battr_tpl.xml ]?
!!
677 bytes copied in 0.004 secs (169250 bytes/sec)
```
Example: Copying the Edited File to flash

The following output example shows how to copy an edited attribute file to flash:

```
Device# copy tftp://directory/edited_battr_tpl.xml flash:
```

Example: Output Showing That the Edited File Was Imported

The following `show running-config` output example shows how to correctly copy the browser attribute file to flash:

```
Device# show running-config
webvpn context g
  browser-attribute import flash:battr_tpl.xml
  ssl authenticate verify all
```

Example: Copying the Language File to Another PC for Editing

The following output example shows how to copy a language file to another PC for editing:

```
Device# copy flash: tftp:
Source filename [lang.js]?
Address or name of remote host []? 10.1.1.30
Destination filename [lang.js]?
!!
10649 bytes copied in 0.028 secs (380321 bytes/sec)
```

Example: Copying the Edited Language File to the Storage Device

The following output example shows how to copy the edited language file to flash:

```
Device# copy tftp://directory/edited_lang.js flash:
```

Example: Language Template Created

The following `show running-config` command output example shows how to import the language file “lang.js” correctly:

```
Device# show running-config
policy group default
  functions file-access
  functions file-browse
  functions file-entry
  functions svc-enabled
  mask-urls
  svc address-pool "mypool"
  svc keep-client-installed
  svc split include 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
  default-group-policy default
  gateway g
  language customize mylang flash:lang.js
  inservice
```

Example: URL List

The following output example shows how to copy the URL list template file to another PC for editing:
Device# copy flash: tftp:
    Source filename [url_list_tpl.xml]?
    Address or name of remote host []? 10.1.1.30
Destination filename [url_list_tpl.xml]

The following example shows that the URL template file has been copied to flash:

Device# copy tftp://directory/edited_url_list_tpl.xml flash:

The following `show running-config` command output shows that URL list file has been imported into the url-list and that it has been bound to the policy group:

Device# show running-config
policy group default
    url-list "test"
    functions file-access
    functions file-browse
    functions file-entry
    functions svc-enabled
    mask-urls
    svc address-pool "mypool"
    svc keep-client-installed
    svc split include 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
    default-group-policy default
    gateway g
    language customize mylang flash:lang.js
    inservice

Example: Virtual Template

The following configuration and output examples display various aspects of the virtual template feature. The following example, starting in global configuration mode, shows how to create a virtual template and associate it with an SSL VPN context configuration. It also shows how to configure the virtual template for VRF and NAT:

Device(config)# interface virtual-template 100
Device(config-if)# ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet 0/0
Device(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding vrf1
Device(config-if)# ip nat inside
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# webvpn context context1
Device(config-webvpn-context)# virtual-template 100
Device(config-webvpn-context)# exit

The following output example shows how to create a virtual template and associate it with a security zone:

Device(config)# interface virtual-template 200
Device(config-if)# ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet 0/0
Device(config-if)# zone-member security vpn
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# webvpn context context2
Device(config-webvpn-context)# virtual-template 200
Device(config-webvpn-context)# exit
Example: SSL VPN DVTI Support

Example: Configuring per-Tunnel Virtual Templates

The figure below shows an example network where remote users User1 and User2 belong to a context called Context1, User3 belongs to a context called Context2, and they connect to the SSL VPN gateway and access the backend server in the corporate network.

*Figure 15: Topology Showing a per-Tunnel Virtual Template*

This section contains the following examples:

**Example: Configuring in the per-Tunnel Context Using Virtual Templates**

The following example shows how to apply VRF, a firewall policy, and ACLs to each user based on the virtual template configuration.

If the VRF, firewall policy, and ACL features are configured in the virtual template and user policies are not configured on the AAA server, then only the IP features configured in the virtual template are applied to the users. In this example, User1 and User2 belonging to Context1 have zone1, vrf1, and ACL 1 configured whereas User3 belonging to Context2 has zone3, vrf3, and ACL 3 configured. Hence, different users have different IP features configured.

**Virtual Template for User1 and User2**

```
configure terminal
interface virtual-template 1
zone-member security zone1
ip vrf forwarding vrf1
ip access-group 1 in
ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet 0/1
```

**Virtual Template for User3**

```
configure terminal
```
Example: Configuring in the per-Tunnel Context Using Virtual Templates and a AAA Server

The following example shows how to apply the IP feature configuration to the users based on the user-specific configuration available on the AAA server. The user-specific attributes configured on the AAA server are applied to the users when an SSL VPN session establishes a virtual tunnel. The configuration applied to the users will be a combination of the configurations in the virtual template and the AAA server, where AAA attributes have a higher priority when there is a configuration conflict.

In this example, ACL 1 is configured for User1, ACL 2 is configured for User2, and ACL 3 is configured for User3 on the AAA server using the `in` attribute. Even though ACL 4 is applied to all the users in the virtual template, User1 has ACL 1, User2 has ACL 2, and User3 has ACL 3 configured along with zone and VRF configurations available in the virtual template.

Virtual Template for User1 and User2

```conf
interface virtual-template 1
zone-member security zone1
ip vrf forwarding vrf1
ip access-group 4 in
ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet 0/1
```

Virtual Template for User3

```conf
interface virtual-template 3
zone-member security zone3
ip vrf forwarding vrf3
ip access-group 4 in
ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet 0/1
```
**Example: Configuring per-Context Virtual Templates**

The following figure shows remote users User1 and User2 belonging to context1 and User3 belonging to context2, connecting to the SSL VPN gateway and accessing the backend server in the corporate network. Here, the IP feature configuration is applied to each user based on the configuration applied to the WebVPN context of the user.

*Figure 16: Topology Showing a per-Context Virtual Template*

![Topology showing a per-context virtual template](image)

The following output example shows how to apply VRF and a firewall policy to each user based on the WebVPN context of the user. In this example, User1 and User2 connected to Context1 have zone1 and vrf1 configured on the virtual template 1, and User3 connected to Context2 has zone2 and vrf2 configured on virtual template 2.

**Virtual Template for User1**

```plaintext
configure terminal
interface virtual-template 1
zone-member security zone1
```
config terminal
interface virtual-template 2
zone-member security zone2
ip vrf forwarding vrf2
ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet 0/1

WebVPN Context for User2
config terminal
webvpn context context2
virtual-template 2
inservice

You can configure different IP features in the virtual template to configure SSL VPN interoperability with different IP features.

Example: SSL VPN Phase-4 Features

Example: Configuring the Start Before Logon (SBL) Functionality

The following example shows how to configure the SBL functionality:

enable
config terminal
webvpn import svc profile profile1 flash:newName
policy group group1
svc profile profile1
end

Example: Configuring Split ACL Support

The following example shows how to configure split ACL support:

enable
config terminal
ip access-list standard 1
permit 10.0.0.1
deny 10.0.0.2
exit
Example: Configuring IP NetMask Functionality

The following output example shows how to configure the IP netmask functionality:

```
enable
configure terminal
webvpn context context1
policy group policy1
svc address-pool pool1 netmask 255.255.0.0
end
```

Example: Debug Command Output

Example: Configuring SSO

The following output example displays how to create ticket, setup session, and how to handle response information for an SSO configuration:

```
Device# debug webvpn sso
*Jun 12 20:37:01.052: WV-SSO: Redirect to SSO web agent URL -
  http://example.examplecompany.com/vpnauth/
*Jun 12 20:37:01.052: WV-SSO: Set session cookie with SSO redirect
*Jun 12 20:37:01.056: WV-SSO: Set SSO auth flag
*Jun 12 20:37:01.056: WV-SSO: Attach credentials - building auth ticket
*Jun 12 20:37:01.060: WV-SSO: user: [user11], secret: [secret123], version: [1.0], login
time: [BCEFC86D], session key: [C077F97A], SHA256 hash :
  [B07D0A924DB33988D423AE9F937C1C5A66404819]
*Jun 12 20:37:01.060: WV-SSO: auth_ticket :
user11:1.0@C077F97A@BCEFC86D@B07D0A924DB33988D423AE9F937C1C5A66404819
*Jun 12 20:37:01.060: WV-SSO: Decoded credentials -
  user11:1.0@C077F97A@BCEFC86D@B07D0A924DB33988D423AE9F937C1C5A66404819
*Jun 12 20:37:01.060: WV-SSO: Starting SSO request timer for 15-second
*Jun 12 20:37:01.572: WV-SSO: SSO auth response rcvd - status[200]
*Jun 12 20:37:01.572: WV-SSO: Parsed non-SM cookie: SMCHALLENGE
*Jun 12 20:37:01.572: WV-SSO: Parsed SMSESSION cookie
*Jun 12 20:37:01.576: WV-SSO: Sending logon page after SSO auth success
```

Example: Show Command Output

Example: show webvpn context

The following is sample output from the `show webvpn context` command:

```
Device# show webvpn context
Codes: AS - Admin Status, OS - Operation Status
       VHost - Virtual Host
Context Name       Gateway  Domain/VHost       VRF   AS   OS
---------------  --------  ---------------  ------  ----  ----
Default_context   n/a      n/a              n/a    down  down
```
Example: show webvpn context name

The following is sample output from the `show webvpn context` command, entered with the name of a specific SSL VPN context:

```
Device# show webvpn context context1
Admin Status: up
Operation Status: up
CSD Status: Disabled
Certificate authentication type: All attributes (like CRL) are verified
AAA Authentication List not configured
AAA Authentication Domain not configured
Default Group Policy: PG_1
Associated WebVPN Gateway: GW_ONE
Domain Name: DOMAIN_ONE
Maximum Users Allowed: 10000 (default)
NAT Address not configured
VRF Name not configured
```

Example: show webvpn gateway

The following is sample output from the `show webvpn gateway` command:

```
Device# show webvpn gateway

Gateway Name  Admin  Operation
-----------  -----  --------
GW_1          up     up
GW_2          down  down
```

Example: show webvpn gateway name

The following is sample output from the `show webvpn gateway` command, entered with a specific SSL VPN gateway name:

```
Device# show webvpn gateway GW_1
Admin Status: up
Operation Status: up
IP: 10.1.1.1, port: 443
SSL Trustpoint: TP-self-signed-26793562
```

Example: show webvpn nbns context all

The following sample output from the `show webvpn nbns` command, entered with the `context all` keywords:

```
Device# show webvpn nbns context all

NetBIOS name  IP Address  Timestamp
0 total entries
NetBIOS name  IP Address  Timestamp
0 total entries
NetBIOS name  IP Address  Timestamp
0 total entries
```
Example: show webvpn policy

The following is sample output from the show webvpn policy command:

```
Device# show webvpn policy group ONE context all
WEBVPN: group policy = ONE ; context = SSL VPN
  idle timeout = 2100 sec
  session timeout = 43200 sec
citrix disabled
dpd client timeout = 300 sec
dpd gateway timeout = 300 sec
keep SSL VPN client installed = disabled
rekey interval = 3600 sec
rekey method =
  lease duration = 43200 sec
WEBVPN: group policy = ONE ; context = SSL VPN TWO
  idle timeout = 2100 sec
  session timeout = 43200 sec
citrix disabled
dpd client timeout = 300 sec
dpd gateway timeout = 300 sec
keep SSL VPN client installed = disabled
rekey interval = 3600 sec
rekey method =
  lease duration = 43200 sec
```

Example: show webvpn policy (with NTLM Disabled)

The following is sample output from the show webvpn policy command. NTLM authentication has been disabled.

```
Device# show webvpn policy group ntlm context ntlm
WEBVPN: group policy = ntlm; context = ntlm
  url list name = "ntlm-server"
  idle timeout = 2100 sec
  session timeout = 43200 sec
functions =
  httpauth-disabled
  file-access
  svc-enabled
citrix disabled
dpd client timeout = 300 sec
dpd gateway timeout = 300 sec
keep SSL VPN client installed = disabled
rekey interval = 3600 sec
rekey method =
  lease duration = 43200 sec
```

Example: show webvpn session

The following is sample output from the show webvpn session command. The output is filtered to display user session information for only the specified context.

```
Device# show webvpn session context SSL VPN
WebVPN context name: SSL VPN
Client_Login_Name    Client_IP_Address    No_of_Connections Created    Last_Used
user1                10.2.1.220            2    04:47:16    00:01:26
user2                10.2.1.221            2    04:48:36    00:01:56
```
Example: show webvpn session user

The following is a sample output from the `show webvpn session` command. The output is filtered to display session information for a specific user.

```
Device# show webvpn session user user1 context all

WebVPN user name = user1; IP address = 10.2.1.220; context = SSL VPN
   No of connections: 0
   Created 00:00:19, Last-used 00:00:18
   CSD enabled
   CSD Session Policy
      CSD Web Browsing Allowed
      CSD Port Forwarding Allowed
      CSD Full Tunneling Disabled
      CSD FILE Access Allowed
   User Policy Parameters
      Group name = ONE
      Group Policy Parameters
         url list name = "Example"
         idle timeout = 2100 sec
         session timeout = 43200 sec
         port forward name = "EMAIL"
         tunnel mode = disabled
         citrix disabled
         dpd client timeout = 300 sec
         dpd gateway timeout = 300 sec
         keep stc installed = disabled
         rekey interval = 3600 sec
         rekey method = ssl
         lease duration = 3600 sec
```

Example: show webvpn stats

The following is an output example from the `show webvpn stats` command entered with the `detail` and `context` keywords:

```
Device# show webvpn stats detail context SSL VPN

WebVPN context name : SSL VPN
User session statistics:
   Active user sessions : 0
   Peak user sessions : 0
   Active user TCP conns : 0
   Session alloc failures : 0
   VPN session timeout : 0
   User cleared VPN sessions: 0
   CEF switched packets - client: 0
   CEF switched packets - server: 0
   AAA pending reqs : 0
   Peak time : never
   Terminated user sessions : 0
   Authentication failures : 0
   VPN idle timeout : 0
   Exceeded ctx user limit : 0
   Relative urls : 0
   Absolute urls : 0
   Non-http(s) absolute urls: 0
   Non-standard path urls : 0
   Interesting tags : 0
   Uninteresting tags : 0
   Interesting attributes : 0
   Uninteresting attributes : 0
   Embedded script statement: 0
   Embedded style statement : 0
   Inline scripts : 0
   Inline styles : 0
   HTML comments : 0
   HTTP/1.0 requests : 0
   HTTP/1.1 requests : 0
   GET requests : 0
   POST requests : 0
   CONNECT requests : 0
   Other request methods : 0
   Through requests : 0
   Gateway requests : 0
   Pipelined requests : 0
   Req with header size >1K : 0
   Processed req hdr bytes : 0
   Processed req body bytes : 0
   HTTP/1.0 responses : 0
   HTTP/1.1 responses : 0
```
### CIFS statistics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statistic</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SMB related Per Context:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP VC's</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active VC's</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aborted Conns</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NetBIOS related Per Context:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name Queries</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NB DGM Requests</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NB TCP Connect Fails</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP related Per Context:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requests</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request Packets RX</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Response Packets TX</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active CIFS context</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Socket statistics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statistic</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sockets in use</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sock Data Buffers in use</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select timers in use</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sock Tx Blocked</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sock Rx Blocked</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sock UDP Connects</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sock Premature Close</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sock Select Timeout Errors</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Port Forward statistics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statistic</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connections serviced</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### WEBVPN Citrix statistics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statistic</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connections serviced</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server Packets in</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server Packets out</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server Bytes in</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server Bytes out</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tunnel Statistics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statistic</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active connections</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peak connections</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect succeed</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconnect succeed</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVCIP install IOS succeed</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVCIP clear IOS succeed</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVCIP install TCP succeed</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPD timeout</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example: show webvpn stats
Example: show webvpn stats sso

The following output example displays statistics for an SSO server:

Device# show webvpn stats sso

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statistic</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auth Requests</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pending Auth Requests</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Successful Requests</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failed Requests</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retransmissions</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS Errors</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection Errors</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request Timeouts</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown Responses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: show webvpn context test_sso

The following output example displays extra information about how to configure SSO servers for the SSL VPN context:

Device# show webvpn context test_sso

Context SSO server: sso-server
- Web agent URL: "http://example1.examplecompany.com/vpnauth/"
- Policy Server Secret: "Secret123"
- Request Re-tries: 5, Request timeout: 15-second

Example: show webvpn policy group sso context test_sso

The following output example displays extra information about how to configure an SSO server for the policy group of the SSL VPN context:

Device# show webvpn policy group sso context test_sso

WV: group policy = sso ; context = test_sso
- idle timeout = 2100 sec
- session timeout = 43200 sec
- sso server name = "server1"
- citrix disabled
- dpd client timeout = 300 sec
- dpd gateway timeout = 300 sec
- keep SSL VPN client installed = disabled
- rekey interval = 3600 sec
- rekey method =
- lease duration = 43200 sec

Example: FVRF show Command Output

The following output example shows how to configure the FVRF:

Device# show webvpn gateway mygateway

Admin Status: down
Operation Status: down
Error and Event Logging: Disabled
GW IP address not configured
SSL Trustpoint: TP-self-signed-788737041
FVRF Name: vrf_1
# Additional References for SSL VPN

## Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security commands</td>
<td>• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands A to C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands D to L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands M to R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco IOS Security Command Reference Commands S to Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client</td>
<td>• Cisco SSL VPN Client Home Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Administrator Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Release Notes for Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco Secure Desktop</td>
<td>Secure Desktop Homepage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP application services commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS IP Application Services Command Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IANA application port numbers</td>
<td>IANA Application Port Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpenSSL Project</td>
<td>Open SSL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIUS accounting</td>
<td>“Configuring RADIUS” chapter in the RADIUS Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Security Command Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN platforms</td>
<td>Cisco IOS SSL VPN Data Sheet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN</td>
<td>SSL VPN Remote User Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended cryptographic algorithms</td>
<td>Next Generation Encryption</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• CISCO-SSLVPN-MIB</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for SSL VPN

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access Control Enhancements</td>
<td>12.4(20)T</td>
<td>This feature allows administrators to configure automatic authentication and authorization for users. Users provide their username and password via the gateway page URL and do not have to re-enter their usernames and passwords from the login page. Authorization is enhanced to support more generic authorization, including local authorization. The following commands were introduced by this feature: aaa authentication auto, aaa authorization list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Name</td>
<td>Release</td>
<td>Feature Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AnyConnect Client Support</td>
<td>12.4(20)T</td>
<td>Effective with this release, AnyConnect Client adds support for several client-side platforms, such as Microsoft Windows, Apple-Mac, and Linux. The ability to install AnyConnect in a standalone mode is also added. In addition, this feature allows multiple SSL VPN client package files to be configured on a gateway. The following command was modified by this feature: <strong>webvpn install</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application ACL Support</td>
<td>12.4(11)T</td>
<td>This feature provides administrators with the flexibility to fine-tune access control at the application layer level. The following commands were introduced by this feature: <strong>acl add error-msg, error-url, list</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Applet Download</td>
<td>12.4(9)T</td>
<td>This feature provides administrators with the option of automatically downloading the port-forwarding applet under the policy group. The following command was modified by this feature: <strong>port-forward</strong> (policy group).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backend HTTP Proxy</td>
<td>12.4(20)T</td>
<td>This feature allows administrators to route user requests through a backend HTTP proxy, providing more flexibility and control than routing through internal web servers. The following command was added by this feature: <strong>http proxy-server</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Name</td>
<td>Release</td>
<td>Feature Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client</td>
<td>12.4(15)T</td>
<td>This feature is the next-generation SSL VPN Client. The feature provides remote users with secure VPN connections to the router platforms supported by SSL VPN and to the Cisco 5500 Series Adaptive Security Appliances.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you have Cisco IOS releases before Release 12.4(15)T see *SSL VPN Client GUI* and if you have Cisco IOS Release 12.4(15)T and later releases, see *Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client GUI*.

The task configurations in this document for tunnel mode apply to SVC and AnyConnect VPN Client.

For more information about the Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client feature, see the *Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Administrator Guide*, Release 2.4 and the *Release Notes for Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client*, Release 2.4.

**Note** Many of the features listed in the documents *Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Administrator Guide* and *Release Notes for Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client, Version 2.0* apply only to the Cisco ASA 5500 Series Adaptive Security Appliances. For a list of features that do not currently apply to other Cisco platforms, see the restriction in the *Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client* of this document.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Debug Infrastructure</td>
<td>12.4(11)T</td>
<td>Updates to the <code>webvpn debug</code> command provide administrators with the ability to turn debugging on for any one user or group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The following keywords were introduced by this feature: <code>acl, entry sso, verbose</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The following keyword options were added for the <code>http</code> keyword: <code>authentication, trace, and verbose</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The <code>verbose</code> keyword option was added for the <code>citrix, cookie, tunnel, and webservice</code> keywords.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The <code>port-forward</code> keyword was deleted and the <code>detail</code> keyword option for the <code>tunnel</code> keyword was deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTLS Support for IOS SSL VPN</td>
<td>15.1(2)T</td>
<td>The DTLS Support for IOS SSL VPN feature enables DTLS as a transport protocol for the traffic tunneled through SSL VPN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The following commands were introduced or modified: <code>debug webvpn dtls, dtls port, svc dtls</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full-Tunnel CEF Support</td>
<td>12.4(20)T</td>
<td>This feature provides better performance for full-tunnel packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUI Enhancements</td>
<td>12.4(15)T</td>
<td>These enhancements provide updated examples and explanation of the Web VPN GUIs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internationalization</td>
<td>12.4(22)T</td>
<td>The Internationalization feature provides multi-language support for SSL VPN clients, such as Cisco Secure Desktop (CSD) and SSL VPN Client (SVC).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The following commands were introduced: <code>browser-attribute import, import language, webvpn create template</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Name</td>
<td>Release</td>
<td>Feature Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licensing Support for Cisco IOS SSL VPNs</td>
<td>15.0(1)M</td>
<td>A license count is associated with each counted license and the count indicates the instances of the feature available for use in the system. In Cisco IOS Release 15.0(1)M, support was added for Cisco 880, Cisco 890, Cisco 1900, Cisco 2900, and Cisco 3900 series routers. The following commands were introduced or modified: <code>debug webvpn license</code>, <code>show webvpn license</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max-user Limit Message</td>
<td>12.4(22)T</td>
<td>This error message is received when you try to log in to a Web VPN context and a maximum limit has been reached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Netegrity Cookie-Based Single SignOn (SSO) Support</td>
<td>12.4(11)T</td>
<td>This feature allows administrators to configure an SSO server that sets a SiteMinder cookie in the browser of a user when the user initially logs in. The benefit of this feature is that users are prompted to log in only a single time. The following commands were modified for this feature: <code>clear webvpn stats</code>, <code>debug webvpn</code>, <code>show webvpn context</code>, <code>show webvpn policy</code>, and <code>show webvpn stats</code>. The following commands were added for this feature: <code>max-retry-attempts</code>, <code>request-timeout</code>, <code>secret-key</code>, <code>sso-server</code>, and <code>web-agent-url</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTLM Authentication</td>
<td>12.4(9)T</td>
<td>This feature provides NT LAN Manager (NTLM) authentication support. The following command was modified by this feature: <code>functions</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Name</td>
<td>Release</td>
<td>Feature Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port-Forward Enhancements</td>
<td>12.4(11)T</td>
<td>This feature provides administrators with more options for configuring HTTP proxy and portal pages. The following commands were added for this feature: acl, add, deny, error-msg, error-url, list, and permit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIUS Accounting</td>
<td>12.4(9)T</td>
<td>This feature provides for RADIUS accounting for SSL VPN sessions. The following command was added by this feature: webvpn aaa accounting-list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN</td>
<td>12.4(6)T</td>
<td>This feature enhances SSL VPN support in the Cisco IOS software. This feature provides a comprehensive solution that allows easy access to a broad range of web resources and web-enabled applications using native HTTP over SSL (HTTPS) browser support. SSL VPN introduced three modes of SSL VPN access: clientless, thin-client, and full-tunnel client support. The following command was introduced in Cisco IOS Release 12.4(15)T: cifs-url-list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN Client-Side Certificate-Based Authentication</td>
<td>15.0(1)M</td>
<td>This feature enables SSL VPN to authenticate clients based on the client’s AAA username and password, and supports webvpn gateway authentication of clients using AAA certificates. The following command was modified by this feature: authentication certificate, ca trustpoint, match-certificate, svc profile, username-prefill, webvpn import svc profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Name</td>
<td>Release</td>
<td>Feature Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN DVTI Support</td>
<td>15.1(1)T</td>
<td>The SSL VPN DVTI Support feature adds DVTI support to the SSL VPN and hence enables seamless interoperability with IP features, such as firewalls, NAT, ACL, and VRF. This feature also provides DVTI support, which allows the configuration of IP features on a per-tunnel basis. The following command was introduced or modified: virtual-template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN MIB</td>
<td>15.5(2)T</td>
<td>The SSL VPN MIB represents the Cisco implementation-specific attributes of a Cisco entity that implements SSL VPN. The MIB provides operational information in Cisco’s SSL VPN implementation by managing the SSLVPN, trap control, and notification groups. For example, the SSL VPN MIB provides the number of active SSL tunnels on the device. In Cisco IOS Release 15.5(2)T, this feature was introduced on Cisco 800 Integrated Services Routers, Cisco 3900 Integrated Services Routers, and 3900E Series Integrated Services Routers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Feature Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN Phase-4 Features</td>
<td>15.1(1)T</td>
<td>The SSL VPN Phase-4 Features feature provides the following enhancements to the Cisco IOS SSL VPN:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• ACL support for split tunneling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• IP mask for IP pool address assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Undoing the renaming of AnyConnect or SVC Full Tunnel Cisco package during installation on a Cisco IOS router</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Adding per-user SSL VPN session statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Start Before Logon option for the Cisco IOS SSL VPN headend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The following commands were introduced or modified: show webvpn session, svc address-pool, svc module, svc split.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stateless High Availability with Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP)</td>
<td>12.4(20)T</td>
<td>This feature allows stateless failover to be applied to VPN routers by using HSRP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The following command was modified by this feature: ip address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URL Obfuscation</td>
<td>12.4(11)T</td>
<td>This feature provides administrators with the ability to obfuscate, or mask, sensitive portions of an enterprise URL, such as IP addresses, hostnames, or port numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The following command was added by this feature: mask-urls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Name</td>
<td>Release</td>
<td>Feature Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URL Rewrite Splitter</td>
<td>12.4(20)T</td>
<td>This feature allows administrators to selectively mangle requests to the gateway. The following commands were added by this feature: <strong>host</strong>, <strong>ip</strong>, <strong>unmatched-action</strong>, and <strong>url rewrite</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User-Level Bookmarking</td>
<td>12.4(15)T</td>
<td>This feature allows a user to bookmark URLs while connected through an SSL VPN tunnel. The following command was added by this feature: <strong>user-profile location</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Templates</td>
<td>12.4(24)T1</td>
<td>A virtual template enables SSL VPN to interoperate with IP features such as NAT, firewall, and policy-based routing. The following command was introduced: <strong>virtual-template</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support

Smart Tunnels Support is a Secure Socket Layer (SSL) VPN feature used to instruct TCP-based client applications that use the winsock library to direct all traffic through the SSL tunnel established between a local relay process and the SSL VPN gateway. The SSL VPN is also known as WebVPN.

- Finding Feature Information, on page 149
- Prerequisites for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support, on page 149
- Restrictions for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support, on page 150
- Information About Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support, on page 150
- How to Configure Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support, on page 151
- Configuration Examples for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support, on page 159
- Additional References, on page 160
- Feature Information for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support, on page 161

Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see Bug Search Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Prerequisites for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support

- The operating system of the host must be a 32-bit version of Microsoft Windows Vista or Windows XP or Windows 2000.

- The web browser must be enabled with ActiveX or Javascript.

- A headend gateway address must be added in the Trusted Site Zone for Microsoft Windows Vista users with smart tunnel or port forwarding.

- The Messaging Application Programming Interface (MAPI) protocol must be used for Microsoft Outlook Exchange communication and an AnyConnect VPN client for remote users.
• Administrative privileges are required to configure the Smart Tunnels Support feature on the router in thin-client access mode.

Restrictions for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support

• Smart tunnels do not support split tunneling, Cisco Secure Desktop, private socket libraries, and MAPI proxy.
• Smart tunnels must not be started in two different web browsers simultaneously.
• Applications only with the winsock dll library such as Remote Desktop, VNCviewer, Outlook Express, Outlook Web Access (OWA), Secure Shell (SSH) using Putty, Telnet, FTP, and others are supported.

Information About Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support

SSL VPN Overview

Cisco IOS SSL VPN provides SSL VPN remote-access connectivity for any internet web browser that supports SSL encryption. The SSL VPN feature extends secure enterprise network access to any authorized user by providing remote-access connectivity to corporate resources from any location with internet service.

Cisco IOS SSL VPN also provides remote-access connectivity from noncorporate-owned machines such as home computers and internet kiosks.

SSL VPN delivers the following three modes of SSL VPN access:

• Clientless--Clientless mode provides secure access to private web resources and web content. This mode is useful for accessing content found in web browsers, databases, and online tools that employ a web interface.

• Thin-client (port-forwarding Java applet)--Thin-client mode extends the capability of the cryptographic functions of the web browser to enable remote access to TCP-based applications such as Post Office Protocol version 3 (POP3), Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP), Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP), Telnet, and SSH.

• Full tunnel client--Full tunnel client mode offers extensive application support through its dynamically downloaded Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client (next-generation SSL VPN Client) for SSL VPN. Full tunnel client mode delivers a lightweight, centrally configured, and easy-to-support SSL VPN tunneling client that provides network layer access to any application virtually.

For more information about SSL VPN, see the Cisco IOS SSL VPN Configuration Guide.

SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support Overview

A smart tunnel is a connection between a TCP-based application and a private site using a clientless (browser based) SSL VPN session, where the SSL VPN gateway works as a pathway and as a proxy server. The Smart Tunnels Support feature is based on the method of modifying an existing default behavior of a TCP-based application that accesses internal resources using SSL VPN.
Unlike port forwarding, a smart tunnel does not require a user connection to the local application and the local port. Instead, the SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support package is delivered and deployed on the client using ActiveX and Java applets. When you launch the Smart Tunnels Support feature on the browser, the ActiveX or Java applet stored on the SSL VPN headend gateway is delivered to the client through HTTP. The client web browser launches the applet and installs the smart tunnel library. This process results in starting the smart tunnel session to relay application data.

If an application is configured with the Smart Tunnels Support feature, all new instances of the application are hooked and the traffic passes through the SSL VPN gateway. By default, the browser launching the smart tunnel is hooked automatically. The Smart Tunnels Support feature provides better performance than plug-ins.

How to Configure Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support

Configuring a Smart Tunnel List and Adding Applications

Configuring the smart tunnel list and adding the applications to the list on the router with administrative privileges creates a tunnel with the listed applications.

Before you begin

Before you can configure the SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support feature, the virtual gateway must be configured and enabled. This gateway configuration specifies the IP address, port number, and trustpoint for the SSL VPN. Enabling the virtual gateway enables the SSL VPN service.

An SSL VPN virtual context must be configured to associate the virtual SSL VPN gateway with the configured features. For more information on SSL VPN gateway configuration and associating the context, see the Cisco IOS SSL VPN Configuration Guide.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn context name
4. smart-tunnel list name
5. appl display-name appl-name windows
6. end

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>webvpn context name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Router(config)# webvpn context sslgw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.

### Step 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>smart-tunnel list name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configures smart tunneling and enters WebVPN smart tunnel configuration mode to configure the applications for tunneling.

### Step 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>appl display-name appl-name windows</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specifies the applications that are to be directed into the smart tunnel.
- Multiple applications can be directed to the tunnel using this command.

### Step 6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>end</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exits WebVPN smart tunnel configuration mode.

### What to Do Next

An SSL VPN policy group configuration must be defined for the smart tunnel. Proceed to task in the Configuring a Group Policy for Smart Tunnels Support task.

### Configuring a Group Policy for Smart Tunnels Support

The group policy configuration with administrative privileges on a router defines the group policy, associates the gateway, and enables the context to the smart tunnel list defined in the WebVPN context configuration mode.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. webvpn context name
4. policy group name
5. smart-tunnel list name
6. exit
7. default-group-policy name
8. gateway name [domain name | virtual-host name]
9. inservice
**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> webvpn context <em>name</em></td>
<td>Enters WebVPN context configuration mode to configure the SSL VPN context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(config)# webvpn context sslgw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> policy group <em>name</em></td>
<td>Enters WebVPN group policy configuration mode to configure a group policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(config-webvpn-context)# policy group new</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> smart-tunnel list <em>name</em></td>
<td>Configures a smart tunnel list for different applications in WebVPN group policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(config-webvpn-group)# smart-tunnel list st1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits WebVPN group policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(config-webvpn-group)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> default-group-policy <em>name</em></td>
<td>Associates a group policy with a WebVPN context configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Router(config-webvpn-context)# default-group-policy new</td>
<td>• This command is configured to attach a policy group to the WebVPN context when multiple group policies are defined under the context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> gateway <em>name</em> [domain <em>name</em></td>
<td>Associates a WebVPN gateway with a WebVPN context.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| virtual-host *name*] | }
## Purpose

### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-webvpn-context)# gateway sslgw</td>
<td>• The gateway configured is associated with the WebVPN context in this configuration step.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 9 inservice</td>
<td>Enables a WebVPN context configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>• The context is put “in service” by entering this command. However, the context is not operational until it is associated with an enabled SSL VPN gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 10 end</td>
<td>Exits WebVPN context configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router(config-webvpn-context)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Troubleshooting Tips

Use the `debug webvpn http` command to debug tunnels in Cisco IOS software.

### What to Do Next

Configuring the Smart Tunnels Support on the router ends the configuration activity of an administrator. Once the client logs in to the SSL VPN enabled web browser after a router is configured with a smart tunnel, the user must enable smart tunneling by installing ActiveX or Java applet with settings. Proceed to the Enabling a Smart Tunnel with the Client Web Browser, on page 154 for more information.

### Enabling a Smart Tunnel with the Client Web Browser

An SSL VPN enabled client web browser automatically launches the ActiveX or Java applet to install the smart tunnel. This process enables the smart tunnel session to relay data.

**Before you begin**

Smart tunnels support must be configured on the router before enabling it on the client’s web browser.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. Log in to the application using the username and the password.
2. To enable smart tunneling, click the **Start** button present for the Smart Tunnel Application.
3. To proceed with the installation, click **Run**.
4. To proceed with the settings, click **Yes**.
5. To proceed with the settings, click **Run**.
6. To proceed with the settings, click **Run**.
7. To allow your data to pass through the specified IP address, click **Yes**.
DETAILED STEPS

**Step 1**
Log in to the application using the username and the password.
The figure below is an example of an SSL VPN Service login window.

*Figure 17: Login Window*

The figure below shows the SSL VPN Service main window displayed after logging into the application.

*Figure 18: SSL VPN Service Main Window*

The Smart Tunnel Application is displayed in the Application Access area of the window.

**Step 2**
To enable smart tunneling, click the **Start** button present for the Smart Tunnel Application.

A security warning related to the ActiveX installation is displayed when the user clicks the Start button of the Smart Tunnel Application. The figure below shows the security warning dialog box.
Step 3
To proceed with the installation, click **Run**.

A certificate verification warning is displayed after ActiveX is installed. The figure below shows the certificate verification warning dialog box.

**Figure 20: Certificate Verification Warning**

Step 4
To proceed with the settings, click **Yes**.

**Note** This certificate verification warning can be avoided if the administrator configures the appropriate certificate.

A hostname mismatch warning is displayed after the certificate verification error is overridden. The figure below shows the hostname mismatch warning dialog box.
Step 5  
To proceed with the settings, click **Run**.

*Note*  
This hostname mismatch warning can be avoided if the administrator configures the appropriate hostname.

An application signature error warning is displayed after overriding the hostname mismatch warning. The figure below shows the digital signature warning dialog box.

*Figure 22: Application Digital Signature Warning*

Step 6  
To proceed with the settings, click **Run**.

A data pass-through message is displayed after the digital signature error is overridden. The figure below shows the data pass-through dialog box.

*Figure 23: Data Pass-through Message*

Step 7  
To allow your data to pass through the specified IP address, click **Yes**.
ActiveX is installed and the Smart Tunnel application is displayed on the web browser.

## Smart Tunnel Application Statistics Display

The statistics of the applications that are tunneled through the Smart Tunnel application are also displayed. The figure below shows a typical web browser with smart tunnel statistics.

![Figure 24: Smart Tunnel Application Statistics](image)

The statistics displayed for the Smart Tunnel application on the web browser and the statistics displayed on the router for the `show webvpn smart-tunnel stats` command are always different.

Always log out of the SSL VPN Smart Tunnel Support enabled browser after performing the required tasks to avoid problems in accessing the application in the future.

### Troubleshooting Tips

To enable smart tunnel logging, navigate to the temp folder of the respective system user and execute the following files:

- `rundll32.exe`
- `relay.dll`
- `SetDbgLogLevel xy` (where $x$ is 0 or 1, $y$ specifies the log level within 1-6 range. The default value is 2).
Configuration Examples for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support

Example Configuring a Smart Tunnel List and Adding Applications

The following example shows how to configure the Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support feature on a router:

```
enable
configure terminal
webvpn context sslgw
smart-tunnel list st1
appl ssh putty.exe windows
appl ie iexplore.exe windows
end
```

Example Configuring a Group Policy for Smart Tunnels Support

The following example shows how to configure the group policy for the Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support feature:

```
enable
configure terminal
webvpn context sslgw
policy group new
smart-tunnel list st1
exit
default-group-policy new
gateway sslgw
inservice
end
```

Example Verifying the Smart Tunnel Configuration

The following is sample output from the `show webvpn policy` command that can be used to verify smart tunnel list configuration:

```
Router# show webvpn policy group new context sslgw
WV: group policy = new ; context = sslgw
  idle timeout = 2100 sec
  session timeout = Disabled
  port forward name = "pplist"
  smart tunnel list name = "stlist"
  functions =
    citrix disabled
dpd client timeout = 300 sec
dpd gateway timeout = 300 sec
keepalive interval = 30 sec
SSLVPN Full Tunnel mtu size = 1406 bytes
keep sslvpn client installed = disabled
rekey interval = 3600 sec
```
rekey method =
lease duration = 43200 sec

The following sample output from the `show webvpn stats` command with the `smart-tunnel` and `context` keywords displays smart tunnel statistics:

```
Router# show webvpn stats smart-tunnel context name
WebVPN context name : manmeet
Smart tunnel statistics:
    Client                Server
    proc pkts : 0        proc pkts : 0
    proc bytes : 0       proc bytes : 0
    cef pkts : 0         cef pkts : 0
    cef bytes : 0        cef bytes : 0
```

### Additional References

#### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Commands List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Security Command Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN feature guide</td>
<td>SSL VPN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN Remote user guide</td>
<td>SSL VPN Remote User Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN configuration guide</td>
<td>Cisco IOS SSL VPN Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Standards

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No new or modified MIBs are supported by this feature, and support for existing MIBs has not been modified by this feature.</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco software releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 6: Feature Information for Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS SSL VPN Smart Tunnels Support</td>
<td>15.1(3)T</td>
<td>Smart Tunnels Support is an SSL VPN related feature used to instruct TCP-based client applications to direct all traffic through the SSL tunnel established between a local relay process and the SSL VPN gateway. In Cisco IOS Release 15.1(3)T, this feature was introduced. The following commands were introduced or modified: <code>appl(webvpn)</code>, <code>smart-tunnel list</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The SSL VPN feature (also known as WebVPN) provides support, in Cisco IOS software, for remote user access to enterprise networks from anywhere on the Internet. Remote access is provided through a Secure Socket Layer- (SSL-) enabled SSL Virtual Private Network (VPN) gateway. The SSL VPN gateway allows remote users to establish a secure VPN tunnel using a web browser. This feature provides a comprehensive solution that allows easy access to a broad range of web resources and web-enabled applications using native HTTP over SSL (HTTPS) browser support.

This document describes how a remote user, whose enterprise network is configured for SSL VPN, can access the network by launching a browser and connecting to the SSL VPN gateway.

For information about SSL VPN from the point of view of a system administrator, see the document SSL VPN.

---

**Note**

The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client is introduced in Cisco IOS Release 12.4(15)T. This feature is the next-generation SSL VPN Client. If you are using Cisco software earlier than Cisco IOS Release 12.4(15)T, you should use SSL VPN Client and see GUI for the SSL VPN Client when you are web browsing. However, if you are using Cisco software Release 12.4(15)T or later, you should use Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client and see GUI for Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client when you are web browsing.

---

**Note**

Security threats, as well as the cryptographic technologies to help protect against them, are constantly changing. For more information about the latest Cisco cryptographic recommendations, see the Next Generation Encryption (NGE) white paper.

---

- Finding Feature Information, on page 164
- SSL VPN Prerequisites for the Remote User, on page 164
- Restrictions for SSL VPN Remote User Guide, on page 165
- Usernames and Passwords, on page 165
- Remote User Interface, on page 166
- Security Tips, on page 180
- Troubleshooting Guidelines, on page 183
- Additional References, on page 183
- Feature Information for SSL VPN for Remote Users, on page 185
- Notices, on page 186
Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see Bug Search Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

SSL VPN Prerequisites for the Remote User

The following prerequisites are required to start SSL VPN on a PC or device:

• Connection to the Internet--Any Internet connection is supported, including:
  • Home DSL, cable, or dial-ups
  • Public kiosks
  • Hotel connections
  • Airport wireless nodes
  • Internet cafes

• Operating system support

Note

Later versions of the following software are also supported.

• Microsoft Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Vista
• Macintosh OS X 10.4.6
• Linux (Redhat RHEL 3.0+, FEDORA 5, or FEDORA 6)

• SSL VPN-supported browser--The following browsers have been verified for SSL VPN. Other browsers might not fully support SSL VPN features.

Note

Later versions of the following software are also supported.

• Internet Explorer 6.0 or 7.0
• Firefox 2.0 (Windows and Linux)
• Safari 2.0.3

• Cookies enabled--Cookies must be enabled on the browser to access applications through port forwarding.

• Pop-ups enabled--Pop-ups should be enabled on the browser to display the floating SSL VPN toolbar and timeout warnings. If pop-ups are blocked, change the browser setting and click the SSL VPN floating toolbar icon on the in-page toolbar to display the floating toolbar.
If pop-ups are disabled on the browser, SSL VPN does not warn you before disconnecting because of an idle timeout or a maximum connect time.

- URL for SSL VPN-An HTTPS address in the following form:
  
  https://address

where address is the IP address or Domain Name System (DNS) hostname of an interface of the SSL VPN gateway, for example https://10.89.192.163 or https://vpn.example.com.

- SSL VPN username and password

## Restrictions for SSL VPN Remote User Guide

### Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client

Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client does not support the following:

- Adaptive Security Appliance (ASA) and Adaptive Security Device Manager (ASDM) and any command-line interface (CLI) associated with them
- Adjusting Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) size
- Client-side authentication
- Compression support
- Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) with SSL connections
- IPv6 VPN access
- Language Translation (localization)
- If the maximum user limit has been reached for an SSL VPN and a user tries to log in, he or she receives a “Max-user limit reached” error.
- (Optional) Local printer--SSL VPN does not support printing in clientless mode from a web browser to a network printer. However, printing to a local printer is supported.

- Sequencing
- Standalone Mode

## Usernames and Passwords

The table below lists the type of usernames and passwords that SSL VPN users might have to know.

### Table 7: Usernames and Passwords for SSL VPN Users

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Login Username/ Password Type</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Entered When</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Computer</td>
<td>Access the computer</td>
<td>Starting the computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Login Username/ Password Type</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td>Entered When</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet Provider</td>
<td>Access the Internet</td>
<td>Connecting to an Internet provider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN</td>
<td>Access the remote network</td>
<td>Starting SSL VPN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Server</td>
<td>Access the remote file server</td>
<td>Using the SSL VPN file browsing feature to access a remote file server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate Application Login</td>
<td>Access the firewall-protected internal server</td>
<td>Using the SSL VPN web browsing feature to access an internal protected website</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail Server</td>
<td>Access the remote mail server via SSL VPN</td>
<td>Sending or receiving e-mail messages</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remote User Interface

If your enterprise network has been configured for SSL VPN, you can access the network by launching a browser and connecting to the SSL VPN gateway. Present your credentials and authenticate, and then a portal page (home page) of the enterprise site is displayed. The portal page displays SSL VPN features (for example, e-mail and web browsing) to which you have access on the basis of your credentials. If you have access to all features enabled on the SSL VPN gateway, the home page will provide access links.

The following sections explain the remote user interface in more detail:

Page Flow

This section describes the page flow process (see the figure) for a SSL VPN session. When you enter the HTTPS URL (https://address) into your browser, you are then redirected to https://address/index.html, where the login page is located.

Note

Depending on the configuration of the browser, this redirection may display a warning message in your browser, which indicates that you are being redirected to a secure connection.
Initial Connection

When you connect for the first time, you might be presented with one of the following scenarios:

503 Service Unavailable Message

You might see a “503 Service Unavailable” message if the gateway is experiencing high traffic loads. If you receive this message, try to connect again later.

SSL TLS Certificate

When the HTTPS connection is established, a warning about the SSL/Transport Layer Security (TLS) certificate may display. If the warning displays, you should install this certificate. If the warning does not display, the system already has a certificate that the browser trusts.

You are then connected to the login page.

Login Page

The default login page (see figure below) prompts you to enter your username and password, which are entered into an HTML form. If an authentication failure occurs, the login page displays an error message.
Certificate Authentication

Client certificate authentication is not supported. Only username and password authentication is supported.

Logout Page

The logout page (figure below) displays if you click the logout link or if the session terminates because of an idle timeout or a maximum connection time.
Portal Page

The portal page (figure below) is the main page for the SSL VPN functionality. See the callouts for functions that exist for administrators and users.
The table below provides information about various fields on the portal page.

**Table 8: Information About Fields on the Portal Page**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Administrator-defined bookmarks</td>
<td>Administrator-defined URL lists that cannot be edited by the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browse network</td>
<td>Allows you to browse the file network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Header</td>
<td>Shares the same color value as the “Title.” Set by the administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network File location bar</td>
<td>Allows you to access the network share or folder directly by entering \server\share\folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port forwarding</td>
<td>Downloads the applet and starts port forwarding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunnel connection</td>
<td>Allows you to download the tunnel client and to install tunnel connect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URL address bar</td>
<td>A new window is opened when you click Go.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User-level bookmark add icon</td>
<td>Clicking the icon opens a dialog box so you can add a new bookmark to the Personal folder.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Remote Servers

You may enter an address or URL path of a website that you want to visit in the text box on the portal page. Pages from the remote server are displayed in the browser window. You can then browse to other links on the page.

### Toolbar

A toolbar has been introduced to help you access the SSL VPN functionalities that are outside the portal page. The toolbar is in the upper right corner of the figure below and is outlined in red.
Figure 29: Website with a Toolbar

The toolbar is expanded below in the figure below. The sections that follow it explain how to use the toolbar icons.

Figure 30: Toolbar

Web Browsing

The web browser is the plus icon (see the figure below).

Figure 31: Web Browsing Icon

If you click the web browsing icon, the toolbar expands so that you can enter a URL (see the following figure).

Figure 32: URL Bar
When a remote user goes to a URL through the URL address bar, the window that is already open is used for display.

**Moving the Toolbar**

The push-pin icon (see the figure below) allows you to move the toolbar to the right or left side of the portal page.

*Figure 33: Toolbar Repositioning*

**Returning to the Portal Page**

The house icon allows you to return to the portal page (see the figure below).

*Figure 34: Return to the Portal Page*

If the portal page is present in the parent window and you click to return to the portal page, your screen jumps back (sets the focus) to that window; otherwise, the current page is loaded with the portal page.

**Adding the Current Page to the Personal Bookmark Folder**

You can add the current page to your personal bookmark folder by clicking the page-with-a-plus icon (see the figure below).

*Figure 35: Adding Current Page to Personal Bookmark Folder*

**Displaying the Help Page**

You can display the help page by clicking the question mark icon (see the figure below).

*Figure 36: Help Page*

**Logging Out**

The door icon (see the figure below) allows you to log out.

*Figure 37: Log Out*
Session Timeout

You receive a warning message approximately 1 minute before the session is set to expire, and you receive another message when the session expires. On the workstation, the local time indicates when the message was displayed.

The first message will be similar to the following:

“Your session will expire in x seconds due to inactivity. Click Close to reset the inactivity timer. (browser time and date)” (See the figure below.)

Figure 38: Session Expiration Message

The last message, as shown below in the figure, displays when the time runs out (depending on whether the reason of the session termination is known):

Figure 39: Session Inactivity or Timeout Window

TCP Port Forwarding and Thin Client

Note
This feature requires the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) version 1.4 or later releases to properly support SSL connections.
Because this feature requires installing JRE and configuring the local clients, and because doing so requires administrator permissions on the local system, it is unlikely that you can use applications when you connect from public remote systems.

When you click the Start button of the Thin Client application (under Application Access), a new window is displayed. This window initiates the downloading of a port-forwarding applet. Another window is then displayed. This window asks you to verify the certificate with which this applet is signed. When you accept the certificate, the applet starts running, and port-forwarding entries are displayed (see the figure below). The number of active connections and bytes that are sent and received is also listed on this window.

When you click the Thin Client link, your system may display a dialog box regarding digital certificates, and this dialog box may appear behind other browser windows. If your connection hangs, minimize the browser windows to find this dialog box.

The administrator should have configured IP addresses, DNS names, and port numbers for the e-mail servers. If they are configured, you can launch the e-mail client, which is configured to contact these e-mail servers and send and receive e-mails. Point of Presence3 (POP3), Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP), and Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) protocols are supported.

The window attempts to close automatically if you are logged out using JavaScript. If the session terminated and a new port forwarding connection is established, the applet displays an error message.

Figure 40: TCP Port Forwarding Page
You should always close the Thin Client window when you finish using applications by clicking the close icon. Failure to quit the window properly can cause Thin Client or the applications to be disabled. See the Thin Client-Recovering from Hosts File Error, on page 180 for details.

The table below lists the requirements for Thin Client (Port Forwarding) on your PC or device.

**Table 9: SSL VPN Remote System Thin Client Requirements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remote User System Requirements</th>
<th>Specifications or Use Suggestions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Client applications installed</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cookies enabled on browser</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrator privileges</td>
<td>You must be the local administrator on your PC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun Microsystems JRE version 1.4 or later installed</td>
<td>SSL VPN automatically checks for JRE whenever you start Thin Client. If it is necessary to install JRE, a pop-up window displays, directing you to a site where it is available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client applications configured, if necessary</td>
<td>To configure the client application, use the locally mapped IP address and port number of the server. To find this information, do the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>The Microsoft Outlook client does not require this configuration step.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows XP SP2 patch</td>
<td>If you are running Windows XP SP2, you must install a patch from Microsoft that is available at the following address: <a href="http://support.microsoft.com/?kbid=884020">http://support.microsoft.com/?kbid=884020</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This problem is a known Microsoft issue.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tunnel Connection**

In a typical clientless remote access scenario, you establish an SSL tunnel to move data to and from the internal networks at the application layer (for example, web and e-mail). In tunnel mode, you use an SSL tunnel to move data at the network (IP) layer. Therefore, tunnel mode supports most IP-based applications. Tunnel mode supports many popular corporate applications (for example, Microsoft Outlook, Microsoft Exchange, Lotus Notes E-mail, and Telnet).
The tunnel connection is determined by the group policy configuration. The Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client (next-generation SSL VPN Client) is downloaded and installed on your PC, and the tunnel connection is established after the installation.

By default, Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client is removed from your PC after the connection is closed. However, you have the option to keep the Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client installed on your PC.

### User-Level Bookmarking

Effective with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(15)T, you can bookmark URLs while connected through an SSL VPN tunnel. You can access the bookmarked URLs by clicking the URL.

#### Adding a Bookmark

The figure below shows a typical web page to which a bookmark can be added.

*Figure 41: Add Bookmark*

![Add Bookmark Example](image)

#### Editing a Bookmark

The figure below shows a typical web page to which a bookmark can be edited.

![Edit Bookmark Example](image)
Internationalization

The Internationalization feature allows you to select any language your administrator has imported to view certain SSL VPN web pages (currently: login message, title page, and URL lists).

The figure below shows a portal page in English, as shown in the language selection box.
Figure 43: Portal Page in English

The figure below shows a portal page in Japanese, as shown in the language selection box.

Figure 44: Portal Page in Japanese
Security Tips

You should always log out from the SSL VPN session when you are finished. (To log out of SSL VPN, click the logout icon on the SSL VPN toolbar or quit the browser.)

Using SSL VPN does not ensure that communication with every site is secure. SSL VPN ensures the security of data transmission between your PC or workstation and the SSL VPN gateway on the corporate network. If you then access a non-HTTPS web resource (located on the Internet or on the internal network), the communication from the corporate SSL VPN gateway to the destination web server is not secured.

Browser Caching and Security Implications

If you access SSL VPN through a public or shared Internet system, such as an Internet cafe or kiosk, to ensure the security of your information after terminating or logging out of the SSL VPN session, you must delete all files that you have saved on the PC during the SSL VPN session. These files are not removed automatically upon disconnect.

Note

SSL VPN does not save the content of web pages viewed during the session. However, for additional security, we recommend that you clear your browser cache. Deleting content from a PC does not ensure that it cannot be recovered; keep this fact in mind when downloading sensitive data.

Thin Client-Recovering from Hosts File Error

It is important that you close the Thin Client window properly by clicking the close icon. If you do not close the window properly, the following could occur:

- The next time you try to start Thin Client, it might be disabled; you will receive a “Backup HOSTS File Found” error message.
- The applications might be disabled or might malfunction even when you are running them locally.

These errors can result if you terminate the Thin Client window in any improper way:

- The browser crashes while using Thin Client.
- A power outage or system shutdown occurs while using Thin Client.
- You minimize the Thin Client window and then shut down the computer with the window active (but minimized).

How SSL VPN Uses the Hosts File

The hosts file on your system maps IP addresses to hostnames. When you start Thin Client, SSL VPN modifies the hosts file by adding SSL VPN-specific entries. When you stop Thin Client by properly closing the Thin Client window, SSL VPN returns the hosts file to its original state. The hosts file goes through the following states:

- Before invoking Thin Client, the hosts file is in its original state.
• When Thin Client starts, SSL VPN does the following:
  • Copies the hosts file to hosts.webvpn and creates a backup.
  • Edits the hosts file, inserting SSL VPN-specific information.
• When Thin Client stops, SSL VPN does the following:
  • Copies the backup file to the hosts file, restoring the hosts file to its original state.
  • Deletes hosts.webvpn.
  • After finishing Thin Client, the hosts file is in its original state.

What Happens If You Stop Thin Client Improperly

If you improperly terminate Thin Client, the hosts file is left in the SSL VPN-customized state. SSL VPN checks for this possibility the next time you start Thin Client by searching for a hosts.webvpn file. If SSL VPN finds the file, you receive a “Backup HOSTS File Found” error message, and Thin Client is temporarily disabled.

If you improperly shut down Thin Client, you leave the remote access client or server applications in a suspended state. If you start these applications without using SSL VPN, the applications might malfunction. You might find that hosts that you normally connect to are unavailable. This situation could commonly occur if you run applications remotely from home, fail to quit the Thin Client window before shutting down the computer, and then try to run the applications later from the office.

What to Do

To reenable Thin Client or malfunctioning applications, you should do the following:

Reconfiguring the Hosts File Automatically Using SSL VPN

If you can connect to your remote access server, you should follow these steps to reconfigure the hosts file and reenable both Thin Client and the applications:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. Start SSL VPN and log in. The portal page opens.
2. Click the Applications Access link. A “Backup HOSTS File Found” message displays.
3. Choose one of the following options:

DETAILED STEPS

Step 1  Start SSL VPN and log in. The portal page opens.
Step 2  Click the Applications Access link. A “Backup HOSTS File Found” message displays.
Step 3  Choose one of the following options:
  • Restore from backup--SSL VPN forces a proper shutdown. SSL VPN copies the hosts.webvpn backup file to the hosts file, restoring it to its original state, and then deletes the hosts.webvpn backup file. You then have to restart Thin Client.
  • Do nothing--Thin Client does not start. You are returned to the remote access home page.
Reconfiguring the Hosts File Manually

If you cannot connect to your remote access server from your current location, or if you have customized the hosts file and do not want to lose your edits, you should follow these steps to reconfigure the hosts file and reenable both Thin Client and the applications:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. Locate and edit your hosts file.
2. Check to see if any lines contain the “added by WebVpnPortForward” string.
3. Delete the lines that contain the “# added by WebVpnPortForward” string.
4. Save and close the file.
5. Start SSL VPN and log in. Your home page appears.
6. Click the Thin Client link. The Thin Client window appears. Thin Client is now enabled.

DETAILED STEPS

Step 1 Locate and edit your hosts file.

Step 2 Check to see if any lines contain the “added by WebVpnPortForward” string.

If any lines contain this string, your hosts file is customized for SSL VPN. If your hosts file is customized, it looks similar to the following example:

Example:

```
10.23.0.3 server1 # added by WebVpnPortForward
10.23.0.3 server1.example.com emailxyz.com # added by WebVpnPortForward
10.23.0.4 server2 # added by WebVpnPortForward
10.23.0.4 server2.example.com.emailxyz.com # added by WebVpnPortForward
10.23.0.5 server3 # added by WebVpnPortForward
10.23.0.5 server3.example.com emailxyz.com # added by WebVpnPortForward
# Copyright (c) 1993-1999 Microsoft Corp.
#
# This is a sample HOSTS file used by Microsoft TCP/IP for Windows.
#
# This file contains the mappings of IP addresses to hostnames. Each entry should be kept on an individual line. The IP address should be placed in the first column followed by the corresponding hostname. The IP address and the hostname should be separated by at least one space.
#
# Additionally, comments (such as these) may be inserted on individual lines or following the machine name denoted by a "#" symbol.
#
# For example:
#
# 172.16.102.97 rhino.acme.com # source server
```
Step 3  Delete the lines that contain the “# added by WebVpnPortForward” string.
Step 4  Save and close the file.
Step 5  Start SSL VPN and log in. Your home page appears.
Step 6  Click the Thin Client link. The Thin Client window appears. Thin Client is now enabled.

Troubleshooting Guidelines

The table below provides a list of messages notifying you of various problems, causes, and fixes.

**Table 10: Troubleshooting Guidelines**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Fix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The request to <code>{url}</code> is not allowed. WebVPN has dropped the request.</td>
<td>The administrator does not allow you to access a particular URL.</td>
<td>Contact the administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The server may not exist, or access to it may not be allowed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unable to connect to server <code>{server name}</code>. The server may not exist,</td>
<td>Problem with the server.</td>
<td>Check the server name or contact the administrator if it persists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or access to it may not be allowed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unable to find the server <code>{server or url}</code>. The server may not exist,</td>
<td>DNS cannot resolve the server name or URL location.</td>
<td>Check the URL address or contact the administrator if it persists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or access to it may not be allowed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This (client) machine does not match any identification of a WebVPN</td>
<td>The client computer does not match any profile of Cisco Secure Desktop</td>
<td>Contact the administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user. Please contact your WebVPN provider for assistance.</td>
<td>(CSD).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This (client) machine does not have the web access privilege. Please</td>
<td>The client computer does not meet the security criteria of having web</td>
<td>Check the URL to the gateway or contact the administrator if it persists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contact your WebVPN provider for assistance.</td>
<td>access functionality through the SSL VPN gateway.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSD is enabled, but not installed. Please contact your WebVPN provider</td>
<td>The CSD has been enabled on the gateway, but it is not available.</td>
<td>Contact the administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for assistance.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The requested information is not available.</td>
<td>Various causes.</td>
<td>Contact the administrator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional References

The following sections provide references related to SSL VPN.
### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Commands List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Security Command Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco Secure Desktop</td>
<td>Cisco Secure Desktop Home Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client</td>
<td>• Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client Administrator Guide, Release 2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Release Notes for Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client, Release 2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN (administrator guide)</td>
<td>SSL VPN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended cryptographic algorithms</td>
<td>Next Generation Encryption</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Standards

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standards</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIBs</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No new or modified MIBs are supported by this feature, and support for existing MIBs has not been modified by this feature.</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco software releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RFCs</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for SSL VPN for Remote Users

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature. Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 11: Feature Information for SSL VPN Remote User Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SSL VPN Remote User Guide</td>
<td>12.4(6)T</td>
<td>This section was originally included in the SSL VPN feature document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client</td>
<td>12.4(15)T</td>
<td>This feature is the next-generation SSL VPN Client. The feature provides remote users with secure VPN connections to the router platforms supported by SSL VPN and to the Cisco 5500 Series Adaptive Security Appliances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td></td>
<td>Users who are using Cisco IOS software releases before Release 12.4(15)T see the SSL VPN Client GUI interface when they are web browsing. Users who are using Cisco IOS software Release 12.4(15)T and later see the Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client GUI when they are web browsing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td></td>
<td>See the restrictions in the Feature Information for SSL VPN for Remote Users, on page 185 for features not currently supported by Cisco AnyConnect VPN Client on platforms other than the Cisco ASA 5500 series Adaptive Security Appliance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUI Enhancements</td>
<td>12.4(15)T</td>
<td>These enhancements provide updated examples and explanation of the Web VPN GUIs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The following sections provide information about these updates:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Name</td>
<td>Releases</td>
<td>Feature Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internationalization</td>
<td>12.4(22)T</td>
<td>This feature allows administrators to customize certain SSL VPN web pages so they can be viewed in languages other than English. The following section provides information about this feature:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max-user limit error message</td>
<td>12.4(22)T</td>
<td>If the maximum user limit has been reached for an SSL VPN and a user tries to log in, he or she receives an error message. The following section provides information about this message:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notices**

The following notices pertain to this software license.

**OpenSSL Open SSL Project**

This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/).

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).

This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

**License Issues**

The OpenSSL toolkit stays under a dual license, i.e. both the conditions of the OpenSSL License and the original SSLeay license apply to the toolkit. See below for the actual license texts. Actually both licenses are BSD-style Open Source licenses. In case of any license issues related to OpenSSL please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.

**OpenSSL License:**

Copyright © 1998-2007 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment: “This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/).”

4. The names “OpenSSL Toolkit” and “OpenSSL Project” must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.
5. Products derived from this software may not be called “OpenSSL” nor may “OpenSSL” appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.

6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment:

“This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/)”.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Original SSLeay License:

Copyright © 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).

The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscape’s SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are adhered to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RSA, lhash, AES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Copyright remains Eric Young’s, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed. If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used. This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

“This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)”.

The word ‘cryptographic’ can be left out if the routines from the library being used are not cryptography-related.
1. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement: “This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)”. 

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The license and distribution terms for any publicly available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution license [including the GNU Public License].